

МІЖРЕГІОНАЛЬНА  
АКАДЕМІЯ УПРАВЛІННЯ ПЕРСОНАЛОМ



МАУП

**І. С. Бахов**

**ENGLISH GRAMMAR PRACTICE**

**ПРАКТИКУМ З ГРАМАТИКИ  
АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ**

2-ге видання, перероблене і доповнене

МАУП

Київ 2006

ББК 81.2АНГ-923  
Б30

Рецензенти: *І. А. Хижняк*, д-р іст. і політ. наук, канд. філол. наук,  
проф.  
*О. Г. Ярова*, канд. психол. наук, доц.

*Схвалено Вченою радою Міжрегіональної Академії управління  
персоналом (протокол № 9 від 28.04.06)*

**Бахов І. С.**

Б30 English Grammar Practice=Практикум з граматики англійської мови. — 2-ге вид., переробл. і допов. — К. : МАУП, 2006. — 216 с. — Бібліогр.: с. 214.

ISBN 966-608-640-9

Практикум містить граматичні вправи з основних тем англійської граматики: часи дієслова, прийменники, модальні дієслова, неособові форми дієслова, інфінітив, герундій, пасивний стан, непряма мова, умовні речення, умовний спосіб після *I wish*. Практикум передбачає роботу студентів над вправами під керівництвом викладача і самостійно. Вправи можна використовувати для додаткової роботи на практичних заняттях.

Для студентів, які мають середній рівень знань з англійської мови, і викладачів.

**ББК 81.2АНГ-923**

© І. С. Бахов, 2001

© І. С. Бахов, 2006, переробл. і допов.

© Міжрегіональна Академія управління персоналом (МАУП), 2006

ISBN 966-608-640-9

---

---

## Передмова

---

---

Пропонований посібник є другим, виправленим і доповненим виданням “Практикуму з граматики англійської мови”. У ньому враховано практичний досвід роботи автора та зауваження рецензентів і викладачів-практиків, які працювали з посібником.

“Практикум з граматики англійської мови” призначений студентам із середнім рівнем знань англійської мови, які вже мають базові знання і прагнуть систематизувати та поглибити їх. Практикум можна використовувати для повторення і як засіб для відпрацювання нових граматичних структур. Він може стати у пригоді студентам з вищим рівнем знань, які мають певні проблеми з окремих положень англійської граматики і потребують матеріалу для практичних вправ, а також викладачам англійської мови як додатковий матеріал у роботі із студентами з окремих розділів англійської граматики.

Практикум містить вправи з таких розділів англійської граматики: часи дієслова, модальні дієслова, інфінітив, герундій, пасивний стан, умовні речення. Розділи упорядковано таким чином, щоб студенти мали можливість творчо використовувати їх у процесі вивчення англійської мови згідно з навчальною програмою.

Посібник можна використовувати для групової та індивідуальної роботи студентів незалежно від їх професійного профілю.

Автор висловлює подяку рецензентам професору І. А. Хижняку і доценту О. Г. Яровій за зауваження та побажання, висловлені під час роботи над посібником.

---

---

# TENSES

---

---

## The Verb *to be* in the Present Continuous and Present Simple

**Ex. 1. Write full sentences. Use *am/is/are* each time.**

*Model:* (my shoes very dirty) *My shoes are very dirty.*

1. (my bed very comfortable) My \_\_\_\_\_
2. (your cigarettes in your bag) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (I not very happy today) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (this restaurant very expensive) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (the shops not open today) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (Mr. Kelly's daughter six years old) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (the houses in this street very old) \_\_\_\_\_
8. (the examination not difficult) \_\_\_\_\_
9. (those flowers very beautiful) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Write positive or negative sentences. Use *am/am not/is/isn't/aren't*.**

1. Paris ... the capital of France.
2. I ... interested in football.
3. I ... hungry.
4. It ... warm today.
5. Rome ... in Spain.
6. I ... afraid of dogs.
7. My hands ... cold.
8. Canada ... a very big country.
9. The Amazon ... in Africa.
10. Diamonds ... cheap.
11. Motor-racing ... a dangerous sport.
12. Cats ... big animals.

**Ex. 3. Fill each blank with the correct preposition (*in, on, next to, under, over, between*)**

1. The dresser is ... the bedroom.
2. The shoes are ... the bed.
3. The clock radio is ... the photo.
4. The night table is ... the bed and the dresser.
5. The sink is ... the toilet.
6. The mirror is ... the sink.
7. The table is ... the sofa.
8. The sofa is ... the living room.
9. The pictures are ... the sofa.
10. The flowers are ... the television.
11. The telephone is ... the wall.
12. The bowl is ... the table.
13. The clock is ... the refrigerator.
14. The cabinets are ... the kitchen.
15. The toaster is ... the refrigerator.

**Ex. 4. Complete the sentences. Use *am/are/is* + one of these verbs: *building, coming, having, playing, cooking, standing, swimming*.**

1. Listen! Pat ... the piano. 2. The ... a new hotel in the city center at the moment. 3. Look! Somebody ... in the river. 4. 'You ... on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.' 5. Hurry up! The bus .... 6. "Where are you, George?" "In the kitchen. I ... a meal." 7. (*on the telephone*) "Hello. Can I speak to Ann, please?" "She ... a shower at the moment. Can you phone again later?"

**Ex. 5. Read the story. Then, write questions about the story.**

***Break Time***

It's break time. Break time is from 8:00 to 8:15 every night. Some students are in the cafeteria. Kim is calling her son, Jason. He's home alone tonight. She's asking him, "Is everything all right?" Michael and David are sitting at the table and talking about baseball, their favorite sport.

Some students are in the ladies' room. Olga is washing her hands. Ellen and Susan are combing their hair. Ellen is saying to Susan, "Your new hair style is beautiful."

Some students are in the classroom. Teresa and Patty are doing their homework together.

Teresa is helping Patty with some new work. Mary and Ann are sitting and talking. Mary is putting on her lipstick, and Ann is filing her nails. Her nails are very long. Every night they are different color. Ali and Harry are standing at the desk. Ali is sharpening his pencil. Harry is trying to fix his tape recorder. It isn't working. Ali is saying, "Maybe the batteries are dead."

**Ex. 6. Put the words in these questions in order. Then, write the short answer.**

***Model:*** Olga / Is / ? / her / washing / hands

*Is Olga washing her hands? Yes, she is.*

1. fixing / Harry / tape recorder / Is / ? / his

2. pencil / sharpening / Ali / Is / his / ?

3. doing / Michael / David / homework / their / Are / ? / and

4. Kim / her / ? / Is / combing / hair

**Ex. 7. Read the story. Then, write the questions about the story.**

***Good-bye***

Sarah is standing next to the train. She is very sad. She's crying. She's waving to Tom, her boyfriend. She is unhappy because Tom is leaving. Tom is her boyfriend. He's getting on the train with his suitcases.

Sarah is 18 and she's in high school. Tom is 19 and he is going into the army. Tom is sad about Sarah, but he's excited about his future. He's saying, "Why are you crying?" Sarah is saying, "Because you're leaving and I'm sad." Tom is answering, "I'm not leaving forever. You're my girl."

**Model:** *Where is Sarah standing?*

Next to the train.

1. What..... ?

She's crying.

2. Who ..... ?

Her boyfriend is.

3. What ..... ?

He's getting on the train.

4. Where ..... ?

Into the army.

5. Why ..... ?

Because Tom is leaving.

6. What ..... ?

"You're my girl."

**Ex. 8. Write questions to the following sentences and give negative answers. Use *there is / there are*.**

1. There is a pond in the park. 2. There is a pool in the park. 3. There are boats for rent on the pond. 4. There are some picnic tables in the park. 5. There are barbecue grills next to the pond. 6. There is a play area for children. 7. There are some swings in the play area. 8. There is a fountain next to the tennis courts. 9. There are five basketball courts in the park. 10. There are benches around the pond.

**Ex. 9. Fill in the blank with the correct word. Use *is, are + some***

1. There ... cereal in the cabinet. 2. There ... eggs in the refrigerator. 3. There ... cookies in the cabinet. 4. There ... bananas on the counter. 5. There ... rice in the refrigerator. 6. There ... bread on

the counter. 7. There ... oranges on the counter. 8. There ... apples in the basket. 9. There ... peanut butter in the cabinet. 10. There ... donuts on the counter. 11. There ... coffee in the cup.

**Ex. 10. Put *some, any, no* or their derivatives into each gap.**

1. Have you ... relations? — No, I haven't ..., I have ... relations.  
2. Has she ... nephews or nieces? — She has ... nephews. 3. She has ... sisters, she has only brothers. 4. Do you know ... about Chinese art?  
5. They have ... cousins in Kiev. 6. Have you ... brothers? — No, I haven't ..., I have ... brothers. 7. I have ... good friends. 8. We didn't know ... about his problems: he told us ... . 9. Have you got ... interesting books? 10. Have you ... friends in Britain? 11. He has ... English books in his bookcase. 12. Did you meet ... on your way to school? 13. Have you got ... pencils in your bag? 14. Do we have ... chalk on the blackboard? 15. How could I know that he was ill? ... told me ... . 16. She has ... mistakes in the test.

**Ex. 11. Put *much, many, little* or *few*.**

1. My brother is a young teacher. Every day he spends ... time preparing for his lessons. 2. I know very ... about this writer. It is the first book I am reading. 3. The students of our group ask ... questions at the lecture. They want to know everything. 4. You do not make ... mistakes in your spelling. 5. Does your sister read ... ? — Yes, she does. And your brother? — Oh, he doesn't. He has so ... books, but he reads very ... . 6. Walk quicker, please. We have very ... time. 7. I am sorry to say, I have read very ... books by Jack London.

**Ex. 12. Put the words in these sentences in order.**

1. putting / Donna / on / is / . / food / tray / a
2. line / . / Mr. and Mrs. Bell / in / standing / are
3. hot / cooking / in / Ken and Ray / are / kitchen / the
4. paying for / Patty / lunch / . / is / her
5. lunch / children / . / Kim / eating / with / is / her
6. hamburgers / children / Kim's / eating / . / are
7. eating / Bob / . / lunch / isn't
8. ordering / . / Patty / big / is / lunch / a
9. isn't / friend / . / standing / Olga / with / a
10. are / . / people / Six / standing / in / line

**Ex. 13. Read the story. Then read each sentence. Circle “T” if the sentence is true, “F” if the sentence is false.**

***Teresa***

Teresa is a counter clerk at Mr. Burger. This is her first day of work, and she’s very nervous. Teresa is standing at the back of the counter. Six customers are waiting in line. Patty is giving her order to Teresa, and Donna is putting her food on the tray. Teresa is ringing up Patty’s order on the register. Patty’s order is \$ 3.50. She’s paying with a \$10 bill. Teresa is giving Patty \$7.50 in change.

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| 1. Teresa is a counter clerk.                      | T | F |
| 2. This is her first day of work.                  | T | F |
| 3. Teresa is busy.                                 | T | F |
| 4. Five people are standing in line.               | T | F |
| 5. Teresa is cooking hamburgers for the customers. | T | F |
| 6. Teresa is putting the orders on the tray.       | T | F |
| 7. Donna is ringing up the order on the register.  | T | F |
| 8. Patty’s order is \$2.50.                        | T | F |
| 9. Patty is giving Teresa 10 dollars.              | T | F |
| 10. Teresa is giving Patty the wrong change.       | T | F |

**Ex. 14. Fill in the blank with the correct word (*is / are*).**

1. There (*is, are*) a large table in my room.
2. There (*is, are*) three windows in my classroom.
3. There (*is, are*) a table and four chairs in my room.
4. There (*is, are*) a blackboard, four tables and five chairs in our classroom.
5. There (*is, are*) a textbook and two exercise-books on my table.
6. There (*is, are*) a school in my street.
7. There (*is, are*) very many children in the park today.

**Now, make these sentences interrogative, using *what, where, when, how many*.**

***Model: What is there on my table?***

**Ex. 15. Read the story. Then, answer the questions.**

***The Real Family***

It’s Saturday evening and everyone in the Bean family is tired. The house is beautiful: everything is clean and in order. Olga is saying, “That’s it for me! I’m tired. I’m not going to cook tonight.”



David is laughing. "I agree. Let's go to Gyro's". So, they are all going to eat out at an Italian restaurant near their house. Everyone is going to order his favorite food. The children are going to order pizza with sausage and onions. Olga is going to order spaghetti and meatballs, and David is going to order lasagna.

After dinner, they are going to stop at the video store and pick out some movies.

They are probably going to rent a science fiction movie for the children and a comedy for David and Olga.

**Answer the questions to the story.**

**Model:** Are the Beans going to do more housework? *No, they aren't.*

1. Why not? 2. Is Olga going to cook tonight? 3. Why not? 4. Is Gyro's an Italian restaurant or a friend's house? 5. Are the Beans going to eat at a French restaurant? 6. Are the children going to order pizza? 7. Is David going to order pizza? 8. Are the Beans going to go to the movies? 9. Are they going to rent some movies? 10. Are the children going to watch a comedy? 11. Are the Beans going to relax tonight?

**Ex. 16. Put the words in these sentences in order. Then, write the short answer.**

**Model:** visit / going / ? / Is / brother / Teresa / to / her  
*Is Teresa going to visit her brother? – No, she isn't.*

1. Is / take / to / she / ? / going / the / train /
2. On / ? / she / return / is / going / July 1 / to /
3. July 11 / she / going / Is / leave / ? / on / to /
4. stay / two / Is / going / ? / she / to / weeks / for /
5. Los Angeles / David and his family / Are / drive / ? / to / going / to /
6. a / camper / going / ? / travel / Are / to / in / they /
7. long / take / Are / going / to / they / vocation / ? / a /
8. return / June 20 / Are / ? / they / to / going / on /
9. the / country / they / ? / Are / see / going / a lot of / to /

**Ex. 17. Complete the sentences. Use.... going to + one of these verbs: eat, give, lie, rain, study, walk, wash.**

1. My hair is dirty. I ... it.
2. I don't want to go home by bus. I ... .
3. John's university course begins in October. He ... engineering.

4. Take an umbrella with you. It ... . 5. I'm hungry. I ... this sandwich. 6. It's Val's Birthday next week. We ... her a present. 7. I feel tired. I ... down for an hour.

**Ex. 18. Choose the correct verb in each sentence.**

1. She (*get up, gets up*) at 7:00. 2. They (*eat, eats*) breakfast at 7:30 in the morning. 3. He (*drink, drinks*) coffee. 4. They (*leave, leaves*) for work at 8:00. 5. She (*walk, walks*) to work. 6. She (*work, works*) from 9:00 to 5:00. 7. They (*go, goes*) to school in the evening. 8. They (*get, gets*) home from school at 10:00. 9. He (*watch, watches*) TV after school. 10. They (*go, goes*) to sleep at 12:00.

**Ex. 19. Complete the sentences. All of them are negative.**

Use *don't/doesn't* + one of these verbs: *cost, drive, go, know, play, see, sell, smoke, wash, wear*.

1. "Have a cigarette". "No, thank you ...". 2. They ... newspapers in this shop. 3. She has a car but she ... very often. 4. I like films but I ... to the cinema very often. 5. He smells because he ... very often. 6. It's a cheap hotel. It ... much to stay there. 7. He likes football but he ... very often. 8. I ... much about politics. 9. She is married but she ... a ring. 10. He lives near our house but we ... him very often.

**Ex. 20. Read the story. Then, write ten sentences about your daily routine using verbs from the story.**

***A Typical Day***

Susan and Paul are a young, married couple. They have a busy week. They both get up at 7:00 in the morning. At 7:30 they have a small breakfast, usually toast and juice. Susan drinks tea; Paul drinks coffee. At 8:00 they leave for work.

Susan walks to work because she lives near the office. Paul drives to work because he lives 5 miles from his company. They both work from 9:00 to 5:00; they get home at about 6:00. Then, they go to school. They take their books and drive to a community college in their area. Susan studies nursing, and Paul studies computer science. They arrive home at 10:00. It's a long day, and they are tired.

They talk and relax. Sometimes they study. Sometimes Susan reads and Paul watches TV. At 12:00 they go to bed.

**Ex. 21. Write sentences about the family's weekend.**

It's Saturday. Everyone is going to help with the housework. What is each person going to do? The family is not large: a father, a mother, a son of 10.

Use the following word combinations.

pay the bill	change the sheets	wash the windows
wash the car	wash the dishes	water the plants
clean his room	wash the floor	dust the furniture
cut the grass	clean the room	fix the faucet
iron the shirts	wash the clothes	vacuum the rugs
go food shopping		

*Model: Father is going to pay the bills.*

**Ex. 22. Choose the correct negative verb in each sentence.**

1. Michael (*doesn't live, don't live*) with his family. 2. Michael (*don't stay, doesn't stay*) at home. 3. Michael (*doesn't take, don't take*) the bus to work. 4. Susan and Paul (*doesn't live, don't live*) on the first floor. 5. Susan (*don't drive, doesn't drive*) to work. 6. Susan and Paul (*doesn't have, don't have*) any children. 7. Kim and Don (*doesn't live, don't live*) in a house. 8. Their boys (*doesn't take, don't take*) the bus to school. 9. Kim (*doesn't drive, don't drive*) the boys to school. 10. Kim (*doesn't go, don't go*) to work.

**Ex. 23. Put these questions in the correct order. Then, write the short answer.**

*Model: Don / bus / work / to / Does / ? / the / take  
Does Don take the bus to work? Yes, he does.*

1. wear / ? / suit / a / Does / Paul / work / to
2. Michael / does / ? / alone / live
3. together / Michael / Don / and / Do / ? / drive
4. Do / to / school / ? / the / take / the / bus / boys
5. ? / work / Susan / Does / her / house / near
6. have / Kim / children / and / four / ? / Do / Don
7. the / ? / the / third / boys / live / Do / floor / on
8. stay / Kim / ? / home / Does
9. jeans / boys / ? / school / Do / wear / to / the

**Ex. 24. Read the story. Then, answer the questions.**

**The Apartment Building**

Kim lives on the first floor of this building on Broad Street. It's a noisy building from 7:00 to 8:00 every morning because everybody is getting ready for work.

Michael lives alone in the big apartment on the third floor. He's single, and he goes to parties every night, so he wakes up late every morning. He drives to work at 8:00, but he's always late and always in a hurry. His feet make noise on the stairs.

Susan and Paul are a young married couple. They live on the second floor. They leave at 8:00 a.m., too. Susan is a secretary in a small office near her apartment. She walks to work and enjoys the exercise. Paul works in a factory about fifteen miles from their home. He drives the car.

Kim and Don live on the first floor with their two sons, Jason and Todd. They have a car, but Don takes the bus to work. His office is only fifteen-minute bus ride away. Jason and Todd walk to school together. Kim waves good-bye to them.

At 8:00, everything is quiet. Kim is alone. She has peace and quiet. Now, she can draw and paint. Kim is an artist.

1. Does Michael have a small apartment?
2. Does he stay home at night?
3. Do Susan and Paul leave at the same time?
4. Does Susan like to walk to work?
5. Does Paul live near his factory?
6. Do Kim and Don have a car?
7. Does Kim drive the boys to school every day?
8. Do the boys leave at 8:00 in the morning?
9. Does Kim work?
10. Does she walk to work?

**Ex. 25. Simple Present and Present Continuous.**

**Complete the sentences with *do*, *does*, *is*, or *are*.**

**If no completion is needed, put a slash (/) in the blank.**

1. Jack ... not work at his father's store.
2. ... you have a job?
3. Kate ... works at a restaurant.
4. Tom ... working this afternoon.
5. ... you working today?
6. Emily and Sara ... working at the ice cream store this summer.
7. ... Eric planning to get a job this summer?
8. ... you plan to get a job, too?
9. Dennis ... wears jeans to work every day.
10. She ... a carpenter.
11. Today she ... working at the Hill's house.
12. She and her partner Scott ... building a new porch for Mr. and Mrs. Hill.
13. Dennis and Scott usually work ... together on small construction jobs.
14. A turtle

... lays eggs. 15. ... snakes lay eggs? 16. ... a lizard lay eggs? 17. ... a lizard a reptile? 18. ... turtles and snakes reptiles? 19. Turtles, snakes, and lizards ... all reptiles. 20. Almost all reptiles ... lay eggs. 21. Reptiles ... cold-blooded. 22. Their body temperature ... the same as the temperature of their surroundings.

### Ex. 26. Frequency adverbs.

Complete each sentence with an appropriate frequency adverb from the list: *rarely, never, always, usually, often, seldom, sometimes*.

1. I see one or two films every week. I ... go to the movies. 2. I let my roommate borrow my car one time last year. I ... let my roommate my car. 3. Maria eats cereal for breakfast seven days a week. Maria ... eats cereal for breakfast. 4. Four or five visitors to the museum stay for three hours or longer. Museum visitors ... stay for at least three hours. 5. We occasionally have quizzes in Dr. Jacobs's history class. Dr. Jacobs ... gives quizzes in history class. 6. If the teacher is on time, the class begins at 8:00 A.M. Once in a while, the teacher is a few minutes late. The class ... begins at 8:00 A.M. 7. In the desert, it rains only two days between May and September every year. It ... rains there in the summer. 8. James asks me to go to the sailboat races every year, but I don't accept his invitation because I think sailboat races is boring. I ... go to sailboat races with James. 9. Every time I go to a movie, I buy popcorn. I ... buy popcorn when I go to a movie. 10. Andy and Jake are friends. They go out to dinner at least three times a week. Andy and Jake ... go out to dinner with each other. 11. Andy and Jake do business with each other every once in a while. Most of the time they don't discuss business when they go out to dinner with each other. They ... discuss business during dinner.

### Ex. 27. Simple Present and Present Continuous.

Complete the sentences with the Simple Present or Present Continuous form of the verbs in the list. Each verb is used only one time: *belong, need, see, take, bite, play, shine, understand, drive, prefer, sing, watch, look, rain, snow, write*.

1. Look outside! It *is snowing*. Everything is beautiful and all white. 2. My father... the 8:15 train into the city every weekday morning. 3. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, I walk to work for the

exercise. Every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, I ... my car to work. 4. A: Charlie, can't you hear the telephone? Answer it! B: You get it! I ... my favorite TV show. I don't want to miss anything. 5. A: What kind of tea do you like? B: Well, I'm drinking black tea, but I ... green tea. 6. I'm gaining weight around my waist. These pants are too tight. I ... a larger pair of pants. 7. A: Dinner's ready. Please call the children. B: Where are they? A: They ... a game outside in the street. 8. It's night. There's no moon. Emily is outside. She ... at the sky. She ... more stars than she can count. 9. Michael has a good voice. Sometimes he ... with a musical group in town. It's a good way to earn a little extra money. 10. A: Ouch! B: What's the matter? A: Every time I eat too fast, I ... my tongue. 11. Alicia always ... in her diary after dinner. 12. Thank you for your help in algebra. Now I ... that lesson. 13. This magazine isn't mine. It ... to Colette. 14. I can see a rainbow because the sun ... and it ... at the same time.

**Ex. 28. Read the story. Then, write the questions.**

*Jason and Todd*

Jason and Todd are brothers. The boys are both in junior high school. Jason is 13. He's in 8<sup>th</sup> grade. Todd is 15. He's in 9<sup>th</sup> grade.

After school, the boys are always busy. Jason is a baseball player. He's in the major leagues.

Todd enjoys sports, too. He plays baseball and basketball after school, but he isn't on the school team. Every day at 4:30, Todd delivers newspapers. He delivers fifty newspapers in his area. On Friday afternoon, Jason helps him. Todd collects money from the customers, and Jason delivers the newspapers. With tips, Todd makes about \$30 a week. Todd is saving for a computer. It costs about \$1,500. He already has \$900 in the bank.

**Model:** What does Jason do after school? He plays baseball.

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. What _____?                | A baseball player in the major league. |
| 2. Who _____?                 | Todd does.                             |
| 3. What _____?                | He delivers newspapers.                |
| 4. How many newspapers _____? | Fifty.                                 |
| 5. When _____?                | On Friday afternoon.                   |
| 6. Who _____?                 | Jason does.                            |

7. How much money \_\_\_\_\_? About \$30.

8. How much money \_\_\_\_\_? \$900.

**Ex. 29. Complete the questions with *do, does, is, or are*. Then, complete both the affirmative and negative short answers.**

*Model:* A: Are you leaving now? B: Yes, *I am* (or: *No, I'm not*).

1. A: ... your neighbors know that you are a police officer?

2. A: ... you follow the same routine every morning?

3. A: ... Dr. Jarvis know the name of her new assistant yet?

4. A: ... Paul and Beth studying the problem?

5. A: ... they understand the problem?

6. A: ... Mike reading the paper and watching television at the same time?

7. A: ... you listening to me?

8. A: ... that building safe?

9. A: ... the weather affect your mood?

**Ex. 30. Read the story. Then, answer the questions.**

***Paula and Patty***

Paula and Patty are sisters, but they don't feel the same about their health and their diet. Patty worries about Paula. Paula gets sick a lot.

Patty pays attention to her diet. She eats fruit and vegetables, chicken and fish. She doesn't use salt or sugar in her food. Patty always exercises. She jogs every day after work. She swims at the local pool in the summertime.

Paula doesn't pay attention to her diet. She has two cups of coffee and a donut for breakfast. Sometimes she eats lunch; sometimes she doesn't. She stops at a fast food restaurant every night after work and picks up a hamburger, chicken or pizza for dinner.

Patty and Paula are in the kitchen, and they are talking. Patty is saying, "Come on, Paula. You're getting sick. You cough all the time and you're getting fat. Stop smoking, stop the junk food. Come out and jog with me." Paula is saying, "I don't know. I'm very tired after work. I don't have much energy."

**Answer these questions about yourself.**

1. Do you smoke? 2. Are you smoking now? 3. Do you jog? 4. Do you drink coffee? 5. Are you drinking coffee now? 6. Do you eat a lot of fruit and vegetables? 7. Do you like junk food? 8. Are you

having a snack now? 9. Do you work? 10. Do you get tired after work? 11. Are you getting tired now?

**Ex. 31. Use either Simple Present or Present Continuous of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. I can't afford that ring. It (*cost*) ... too much. 2. Look. It (*begin*) ... to rain. Unfortunately, I (*have, not*) ... my umbrella with me. Tom is lucky. He (*wear*) a raincoat. 3. I (*own, not*) ... an umbrella. I (*wear*) ... a waterproof hat on rainy days. 4. Right now I (*look*) ... around the classroom. Ann (*write*) ... in her book. Carlos (*bite*) ... his pencil. Peter (*scratch*) ... his head. Ahmed (*stare*) ... out of the window. He (*seem*) ... to be daydreaming, but perhaps he (*think*) ... hard about verb tenses. What (*think, you*) ... Ahmed (*do*) ... ? 5. There's a book on my desk, but it (*belong, not*) to me. 6. Dennis (*fix*) ... the roof of his house today, and he (*need*) ... some help. Can you help him? 7. Barbara (*tutor, often*) ... other students in her math class. This afternoon she (*help*) ... . Steve with his math assignment because he (*understand, not*) ... the material they (*work*) ... on in the class this week. 8. Right now I (*look*) ... at Janet. She (*look*) ... angry. I wonder what's the matter. She (*have*) ... a frown on her face. She certainly (*have, not*) ... any fun right now. 9. A: Who is that woman who (*stand*) ... next to the window? B: "Which woman? (*Talk, you*) ... about the woman who (*wear*) ... the blue and gold dress? A: No, I (*talk, not*) ... about her. I (*mean*) ... the woman who (*wear*) ... the blue suit. B: Oh. I (*know, not*) ... . I (*recognize, not*) ... her. 10. A: Close your eyes. Now listen carefully. What (*hear, you*) ... ? What (*do, I*) ... ? B: I (*believe*) ... you (*rub*) ... the top of your hand? A: Close, but not exactly right. Try again. (*Listen, you*) ... carefully? B: Aha! You (*rub*) ... your hands together. A: Right!

**Ex. 32. Read the story. Use the verbs in brackets in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.**

One Sunday Agnes and her mother went to the zoo. Agnes was very excited. She was interested in everything she saw.

"Mother, look", she said. "There (*to be*) a monkey in this cage. It (*to eat*) an apple. Now it (*to give*) a bite to another monkey. I (*to think*) monkeys (*to like*) apples very much."



“Yes, dear”, said her mother.

“Now I (*to want*) to go and see the lions and tigers. Where they (*to live*), mother?” “In that big house over there. Come along.”

Agnes enjoyed herself very much in the lion house.

“Mother”, she said, “the tiger (*to want*) a drink: it (*to go*) to the dish of water there in the corner. And the lion (*to look*) right at me. You (*to think*) it (*to want*) to eat me up? When the lions and tigers (*to have*) their dinner, mother?”

“The keepers (*to bring*) them great pieces of meat every day at four o’clock. And they (*to make*) a big noise before their dinner time, so everybody (*to know*) they (*to be*) hungry.”

**Ex. 33. Use either the Present Simple or Present Continuous of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Diane can’t come to the phone because she (*wash*) her hair.  
2. Diane (*wash*) her hair every other day or so. 3. Kathy (*sit*) in the front row during class, but today she (*sit*) in the last row. 4. Please be quiet. I (*try*) to concentrate. 5. (*Lock, you, always*) the door to your apartment when you leave? 6. I wrote to my friend last week. She hasn’t answered my letter yet. I (*wait, still*) for a reply. 7. After three days of rain, I’m glad that the sun (*shine*) again today. 8. Every morning, the sun (*shine*) in my bedroom window and (*wake*) me up. 9. A: Look! It (*snow*) B: It’s beautiful! This is the first time I’ve ever seen snow. It (*snow, not*) in my country. 10. Mike is a student, but he (*go, not*) to school right now because it’s summer. He (*attend*) college from September to May every year, but in the summers he (*have, usually*) a job at the post office. In fact, he (*work*) there this summer.

**Ex. 34. Use either Present Simple or Present Continuous.**

1. It (*be*) ... a cool autumn day. The wind (*blow*) ... and the leaves (*fall*) ... to the ground. 2. My roommate (*eat*) ... breakfast at exactly seven o’clock every morning. I usually (*eat, not*) ... breakfast at all. What time (*eat, you*) ... in the morning? 3. A: (*shop, you*) ... at this store every week? B: No I ... I (*shop, usually*) ... at the store near my apartment. A: (*shop, you*) ... here now? B: I (*try*) ... to find something special for my father’s birthday. 4. A: Flowers! Flowers for sale! Yes sir! Can I help you? B: I’ll take those — the yellow ones.

A: Here you are, mister. Are they for a special occasion? B: I (*buy*) ... them for my wife. I (*buy*) ... her flowers on the first day of every month. 5. A: I like to read. How about you? (*read, you*) ... a lot? B: Yes, I ... . I (*read*) ... at least one novel each week, and I (*subscribe*) ... to several magazines. And I always (*look*) ... at the newspaper during breakfast. 6. A: Knock, knock! Anybody home? Hey, Bill! Hi! It's me. Where are you? B: I (*be*) ... in the bedroom! A: What are you doing? B: I (*try*) ... to sleep! A: Oh. Sorry. I won't bother you. Tom, shhh. Bill (*rest*) ... . 7. Before you begin to study, you should ask yourself two questions. First, "Why (*study, I*) ... this subject right now?" Second, "What (*want, I*) ... to learn about this topic?" Students (*need*) ... to understand the purpose of their study. 8. In cold climates many trees (*lose*) ... their leaves in winter. They (*rest*) ... for several months. Then they (*grow*) ... new leaves and flowers in the spring. Some trees (*keep*) ... their leaves during the winter and (*stay*) ... green all year long. In some regions of the earth trees (*grow, not*) ... any leaves. (*grow, tree*) ... on all of the continents in the world?

### Ex. 35. Choose the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

1. Joan is a painter. She (*go*) ... to the opening of every new art show in the city. She (*like*) ... to see the latest work of the artists. Right now she (*prepare*) ... for her own show of her new paintings next month. 2. A: What book (*read, you*) ... ? B: It's about Spain. I (*think*) ... you would enjoy it. A: I (*see*) ... sailing ships on the cover. B: Yes. It (*be*) ... about Spanish exploration in the 17<sup>th</sup> century. 3. A: I (*leave*) ... now. (*want, you*) ... to go with me into town? B: No, thanks. I can't. I (*wait*) ... for my sister to call from the airport so that I can pick her up. 4. I work for an agricultural equipment company called Agro. Right now, Agro (*try*) ... to establish business contacts throughout Europe. At the present time, our sales manager (*travel*) ... in Asia and (*talk*) ... to potential customers. He (*know*) ... both Chinese and Arab. 5. *Jimmy*: Does the earth turn around and around? *Dad*: Yes, Jimmy. The earth (*spin*) ... around and around it's axis as it circles the sun. The earth (*spin*) ... rapidly at this very moment. *Jimmy*: I (*feel, not*) ... anything. (*try, you*) ... to fool me? *Dad*: Of course not! (*think, you, really*) ... that the earth isn't moving? *Jimmy*: I guess so. Yes. I can't see it

move. Yes. It isn't moving. *Dad: (believe, you)* ... only those things that you can see? Look at the trees out the window. All of them (*grow*) ... at this very moment, but you can't see the growth. They (*get*) ... bigger and bigger with every second that passes. You can't see the trees grow, and you can't feel the earth spin, but both events (*take*) ... place at this moment while you and I (*speak*) ... . *Jimmy:* Really? How do you know? **6. A:** Look at Mary! Where (*go, she*) ... and why (*walk, she*) ... so fast? **B:** She (*rush*) ... to a meeting with the company vice-president. Every morning at this time, she (*submit*) ... a report on the previous day's activities and (*present*) ... the daily recommendations. **A:** But I (*hear, usually*) ... the daily recommendations from the president himself at the ten o'clock stuff meetings. **B:** Every day, the vice-president (*rewrite*) ... Mary's comments and (*take*) ... them to the president. At every ten o'clock meeting, the president simply (*read*) ... the same recommendations that Mary stayed up working on the night before.

**Ex. 36. Complete the following sentences with the Present Simple or Present Continuous forms of the verbs in brackets.**

Maria is an athlete who (*represent*) ... her country in the Olympic Games. She (*run*) ... in the marathon, a 26-mile race. She usually (*compete*) ... in the triathlon, which means she (*have*) ... to run 10 kilometers, swim  $1/4$  mile, and ride a bicycle 25 miles. There is only a month to go before the Olympics, so Maria (*train*) ... hard to prepare. During regular training, she (*swim*) ... 1500 meters and (*run*) ... 5 miles, but during this pre-Olympic training, she (*swim*) ... less and she (*run*) ... more. She usually (*work*) ... out in the weight room an hour a day, but this month she (*lift*) ... weights for two hours a day, or double her normal time. Cross-country skiing is part of her winter training, but now that the weather permits, she (*bicycle*) ... and roller - blading, so that different muscle groups are excited. Normally Maria (*be*) ... careful about her diet; she (*eat*) ... a limited amount of fat and a lot of fruits and vegetables. Now she (*make*) ... extra sure that she (*eat*) ... plenty of carbohydrates for energy. In addition, she (*try*) ... to get enough sleep. She (*be*) ... confident that she'll be prepared, mentally and physically, for the Olympics, and she (*be*) ... proud to be a part of this great event.

**Ex. 37. Complete sentences using the Past Simple of the following verbs: *clean, die, enjoy, happen, live, open, play, rain, smoke, start, want, watch, finish.***

1. Yesterday evening I ... television. 2. I ... my teeth three times yesterday. 3. John ... 20 cigarettes yesterday evening. 4. The concert last night ... at 7.30 and ... at 10 o'clock. 5. The accident ... last Tuesday afternoon. 6. When I was a child, I ... to be a doctor. 7. Mozart ... from 1756 to 1791. 8. We ... our holiday last year. We ... at a very good hotel. 9. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it ... . 10. It was hot in the room, so I ... the window. 11. The weather was good yesterday afternoon, so we ... tennis. 12. William Shakespeare ... in 1616.

**Ex. 38. Write sentences about the past (*yesterday, last week, last Sunday* etc.)**

1. He always goes to work by car. Yesterday ... . 2. They always get up early. This morning they ... . 3. Bill often loses his keys. He ... last Saturday. 4. I write a letter to Jane every week. Last week ... . 5. She meets her friends every evening. She ... yesterday evening. 6. I usually read two newspapers every day. ... yesterday. 7. They come to my house every Friday. Last Friday ... . 8. We usually go to the cinema on Sunday. ... last Sunday. 9. Tom always has a shower in the morning. ... this morning. 10. They buy a new car every year. Last year ... . 11. I eat an orange every day. Yesterday ... . 12. We usually do our shopping on Monday. ... last Monday. 13. Julia often takes photographs. Last weekend ... . 14. We leave home at 8:30 every morning. ... this morning.

**Ex. 39. Change the sentences to Simple Past. Choose *yesterday* or *last*.**

**Model:** I walk to my office every morning.

*I walked to my office yesterday.*

1. I talk to my parents on the phone every week. 2. The post office opens at eight o'clock every morning. 3. Mrs. Hall goes to the fruit market every Monday. 4. The company executives meet at 9.00 every Friday morning. 5. I make my own lunch and take it with me every morning. 6. Mr. Clark pays his rent on time every month. 7. The baby falls asleep at three o'clock every afternoon. 8. The last bus to downtown leaves at ten o'clock every night.

**Ex. 40. Use Simple Past of the regular and irregular verbs. Use each verb only one time:**

*call, hold, sell, swim, fight, jump, shake, teach, freeze, ride, stay, think.*

1. Paul ... the bottle of soda so hard that it sprayed all over his clothes. 2. Carol didn't want to go on vacation with us, so she ... home alone all week. 3. Since I hurt my knee, I can't go jogging. Yesterday I ... in the pool for an hour instead. 4. I was terrified just standing over the pool on the high diving board. Finally, I took a deep breath, held my nose, and ... into the water. 5. The climber, who was fearful of falling, ... the rope tightly with both hands. 6. Johnny pushed Alan, and the two boys ... for a few minutes. Neither of them was hurt. 7. Before Caroline started her own company, she ... chemistry at the university. 8. It was extremely cold last night, and the water we put out for the cat ... solid. 9. Before I made my decision, I ... about it for a long, long time. 10. Peter ... your house three times to ask you to go to the movie with us, but there was no answer, so we went ahead without you. 11. My car wouldn't start this morning, so I ... my bicycle to work. 12. I needed money to play tuition at the university, so I ... my motorcycle to my cousin.

**Ex. 41. Use Simple Past of regular and irregular verbs:**  
*ask, build, choose, dig, forgive, lose, play, quit, ring, spend, steal, talk.*

1. The phone ... eight times before anybody answered it. 2. "Oh my gosh! Call the police! Someone ... my car." 3. The architectural firm that I worked for designed this building. My brother's construction company ... it. It took them two years to complete it. 4. The children ... baseball until dark and didn't want to stop for dinner. 5. After I gave a large bone to each of my three dogs, they went to separate corners of the backyard and ... holes to bury their bones. 6. A: Why isn't Bill here for the meeting? He's supposed to give the weekly report. B: I... to him last night on the phone, and he said he'd be here. 7. After looking at all the chairs in the furniture store, I finally ... the red one. It was a difficult decision. 8. A: How are you getting along in your relationship with Ann? B: Not bad. Last night I ... her again to marry me, and she said "maybe." 9. The players are depressed because they ... the game last weekend. Next time they'll play better. 10. A: How can you take a three-month

vocation? What about your job? B: I won't be going back to that job again. I ... yesterday. 11. I can't afford a new car because I ... all my money on new furniture for my apartment. 12. A: Is Maggy still angry with you? B: No, she ... me for what I did, and she's speaking to me again.

**Ex. 42. Use Simple Past of irregular verbs: *give, sweep, wear, fly, catch, hold, take, buy, drink, teach, drive, pay, lead, freeze, run, fight, feel, hear, hide, shut, put, drive, win, fall, get, choose.***

1. I ... the floor of the kitchen with a broom. 2. A bird ... into our apartment through an open window. 3. I ... the bird in my hands and put it back outside. 4. My father ... me how to make furniture. 5. It got so cold last night that the water in the pond ... . 6. When I heard about Sue's problem, I ... sorry for her. 7. Alex ... a map for us to show us how to get to the museum. 8. A few minutes ago, I ... on the radio about a bad plane accident. 9. Pete had an accident. He ... off the roof and ... his leg. 10. Sam ... the race. He ran the fastest. 11. Ted ... his car to Florida last summer. 12. The soldiers ... the battle through the night and into the morning. 13. I used to have a camera, but I ... it because I needed the money. 14. Lily didn't want anyone to find her diary, so she ... it in a shoebox in her closet. 15. There was a cool breeze last night. I opened the window, but Jane got cold and ... it. 16. Rita ... faster than anyone else in the 100 meter dash. 17. None of the other runners was ever in front of Rita during the race. She ... all of the other runners in the race from start to finish. 18. Greg is a penny pincher. I was very surprised when he ... for my dinner. 19. Frank was really thirsty. He ... four glasses of water. 20. Karen had to decide between a blue raincoat and a tan. She finally ... the blue one. 21. Anna ... a beautiful dress to the wedding reception. 22. My pen ran out of ink, so Sam ... me an extra one he had.

**Ex. 43. Make the sentences negative and interrogative. Use Simple Past.**

1. He opened the windows before classes. 2. Ann translated a lot of foreign letters at the office last week. 3. I finished work at five o'clock the day before yesterday. 4. He lived in Kiev five years ago. 5. They returned home in the evening. 6. They discussed a lot of articles from the French magazines last week-end.

**Ex. 44. Open the brackets using the verb in the correct tense.**

1. Who usually (*do*) his homework in this room? 2. Who (*do*) his homework there now? I (*not to know*) 3. I (*live*) near my office last year. I always (*walk*) there. 4. "How well your friend (*speak*) English?" "He (*speak*) English badly." 5. "What language you (*learn*) five years ago?" "I (*learn*) French." 6. "What language he (*learn*) now?" "He (*learn*) German." 7. "How long your class usually (*last*)?" "It usually (*last*) two hours." 8. "How long your class (*last*) on Wednesday morning?" "It only (*last*) an hour." 9. "Who you (*discuss*) this question with last night?" "I (*discuss*) it with my friends." 10. "Who you usually (*go*) home with?" "I (*go*) home with my friends." 11. "How well he usually (*know*) his lessons?" 12. I (*work, not*) at this office three years ago. 13. "You (*work*) here now?" 14. "How long you (*stay*) in Kiev last year?" "I (*stay*) there a month." "How long you (*to be going*) to stay there this year?" "I (*to be going*) to stay there a month, too."

**Ex. 45. Complete the sentences with the Simple Past of the irregular verbs: *be, begin, blow, build, do, find, forget, give, grow, hurt, keep, know, leave, make, meet, put, ring, rise, read, shake, sleep, speak, steal, swim, tear, tell, throw, write.***

1. We ... at the new restaurant last night. The food wasn't very good. 2. Jason ... an excellent job of gluing the broken vase together. 3. The sun ... at 6:21 this morning. 4. My wife gave me a painting for my birthday. I ... it on a wall in my office. 5. Madlen has circles under her eyes because she ... only two hours last night. She was studying for her final exams. 6. John is a good carpenter. He ... the house in which he and his family live. 7. Matt lost his watch. He looked everywhere for it. Finally, he ... it in the washing machine as he was removing the wet clothes to put them into the dryer. He had washed his watch, but it was still ticking. 8. Joy was barefoot. She stepped on a piece of broken glass and ... her foot. 9. Danny and I are old friends. We ... each other in 1995. 10. My friend told me that he had a singing dog. When the dog ... to sing, I ... my hands over my ears and ... the room. 11. My friend ... a note and passed it to me in class. 12. I didn't want anyone else to see the note, so I ... it into tiny pieces and ... it in the wastebasket. 13. My mother ... all the letters I wrote to her when I was in England. She didn't throw

any away. 14. No, I didn't buy any tomatoes. I ... them in a pot on the balcony outside my apartment. 15. Paul was in a hurry to get to class this morning. He ... to comb his hair. 16. Last week I ... an interesting book about the volcanoes in Iceland. 17. When Erica and I were introduced to each other, we ... hands. 18. Nick is in jail because he ... a car. 19. The fish I caught was too small. I carefully returned it to the water. It quickly ... away. 20. I ... the doorbell for a long time, but no one came to the door. 21. Amanda ... a lie. I didn't believe her because I ... the truth. 22. Steve ... the campfire with only one match. Then he ... on the fire to make it burn. 23. The student with the highest grade point average ... a speech at the graduation ceremony. She ... about her hopes for the future of the world.

**Ex. 46. Put in *am, is, are, was, were*. Some sentences are in Present and some are in the Past.**

1. Last year she ... 22, so she ... 23 now. 2. Today the weather ... nice, but yesterday it ... cold. 3. I ... hungry. Can I have something to eat? 4. I ... hungry last night, so I had something to eat. 5. Where ... you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning? 6. Don't buy those shoes. They ... too expensive. 7. Why ... you so angry yesterday? 8. We must go now. It ... very late. 9. This time last year I ... in Paris. 10. We ... tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed. 11. Charlie Chaplin died in 1978. He ... a famous film star. 12. "Where ... the children?" "I don't know. They ... in the garden ten minutes ago."

**Ex. 47. Use Present Simple or Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.**

1. A: (*hear, you*) ... the thunder last night? B: No, I ... . I (*hear, not*) ... anything all night. I (*be*) ... asleep. 2. A: Listen! (*hear, you*) ... a siren in the distance? B: No, I (*not*) ... . I (*hear, not*) ... anything at all. 3. A: (*build, you*) ... that bookshelf? B: No, I ... . My uncle (*build*) ... it for me. 4. A: (*be, a fish*) ... slippery to hold? B: Yes, ... . It can slip right out of your hand. A: How about frogs? (*be, they*) ... slippery? B: Yes, ... . A: What about snakes? B: I (*know, not*) ... . I've never touched a snake. 5. A: I (*want*) ... to go to the mall this afternoon and (*look*) ... for a new bathing suit. (*want, you*) ... to go with me? B: I can't. I (*have*) ... an appointment with my English teacher. Besides, I (*buy*) ... a new bathing suit last year. I (*need, not*) ... a new



one this year. 6. I (*offer*) ... to help my older neighbor carry her groceries into her house every time I see her return from the store. She (*be*) ... always very grateful. Yesterday, she (*offer*) ... to pay me for helping her, but of course I (*accept, not*) ... the offer. 7. Last Monday night, I (*take*) ... my sister and her husband to my favorite restaurant for dinner and (*find*) ... the doors locked. I (*know, not*) ... it then, but my favorite restaurant (*be, not open*) ... on Mondays. We (*want, not*) ... to eat anywhere else, so we (*go*) ... back to my house. I (*make*) ... a salad and (*heat*) ... some soup. Everyone (*seem*) ... satisfied even though I (*be, not*) ... a wonderful cook. 8. My daughter is twenty-one years old. She (*like*) ... to travel. My wife and I (*worry*) ... about her a little when she (*be*) ... away from home, but we also (*trust*) ... her judgement. Last year, after she (*graduate*) ... from the college, she (*go*) ... to Europe with two of her friends. They (*travel, not*) ... by train or by car. Instead, they (*rent*) ... motor scooters and slowly (*ride*) ... through each country they visited. While she (*be*) ... away, my wife and I (*worry*) ... about her safety. We (*be*) ... very happy when we (*see*) ... her smiling face at the airport and (*know*) ... that she was finally safe at home.

**Ex. 48. Simple Past Tense: Wh — Questions. Write questions to complete the conversation.**

**Model:** A: As a child, (*did, live, with your grandparents*) *did you live with your grandparents?*

B: No. My mother's parents lived next door. My father's parents lived far away.

A: (*Where, your father's parents, live*)?

B: They lived in the south of Turkey.

A: (*What, your grandfather, do*)?

B: He had a big farm there.

A: (*work, long hours*)?

B: Yes, he worked twelve hours a day.

A: (*have, many animals on his farm*)?

B: Yes, he had many cows, horses, and chickens. My grandfather lived on the farm his entire life. It belonged to his father before him. My brother and I visited him for one month every summer.

A: (*What, his wife, do*)?

B: My grandmother helped my grandfather with the farm. She worked hard, too. She also brought up my mother and her seven brothers and sisters.

A: (*Where, your grandparents, live*)?

B: Their parents arranged their marriage.

A: (*When, they, meet*)?

B: In the 1940s.

A: (*have, a happy marriage*)?

B: I think so. They never complained.

A: Are your grandparents alive today?

B: My grandfather died six years ago, but my grandmother is still alive. She lives with my father's older brother on the farm.

**Ex. 49. Write questions to the underlined words. Use the Simple Past.**

1. Bob carved the turkey. 2. Bob met Valerie after work. 3. Doug and Norma washed the dishes. 4. Carol met Yoko's friends in San Francisco. 5. Yoko and Carol took a trip. 6. Eleanor helped Valerie with the dishes. 7. Yoko stayed in San Francisco for four days. 8. Carol called Eleanor last Friday. 9. Pete missed Carol and his mother on Thanksgiving. 10. Pete prepared an unusual soup.

**Ex. 50. Use the Simple Present, Present Continuous, or Simple Past form of each verb in brackets.**

1. A: Valerie ... now? (*cook*) B: No, she's not. She (*cook*) yesterday. Bob (*cook*) now. Valerie (*cook*) ... every other day.

2. A: Yolanda is a hardworking student! It's midnight and she ... still ... (*study*). She (*study*) ... all last weekend, too. B: I think she (*study*) every day of the year

3. A: Don't wash the curtains. You (*wash*) ... them last week. B: I (*wash, not*) ... the curtains now. I (*sew*) ... them. There's a small rip on the bottom.

4. A: It (*snow*) ... a lot last night. How are the streets? B: I don't know. Call Dad at the office. He (*walk*) ... to work this morning. A: Okay.

5. A: Gail is in the hospital. She (*call*) ... me yesterday. B: I know. I (*visit*) ... her last night. A: Oh, that's good. Laura (*visit*) ... her now, and I (*want*) ... to visit her this afternoon.

6. A: ... you (*want*) to walk to the park now? B: No, I (*walk*) ... five miles before lunch. I'm tired now.

7. **A:** What ... she (**do**) now? **B:** She (**bake**) ... more cookies. She (**bake**) ... cookies yesterday, but we (**finish**) ... them last night.

8. **A:** ... you (**talk**) to Bob now? I (**need**) ... to tell him something.

**B:** No, I (**talk**) to Juan. I (**talk**) to Bob an hour ago.

9. **A:** You look tired today. **B:** I am. Ellen (**call**) ... me at six o'clock in the morning. **A:** ... you (**joke**) ... ? Why? **B:** She (**want**) ... to borrow my sweater.

**Ex. 51. Choose the correct answer:**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio or can I turn it off?  
A. *Do you listen*                      B. *Are you listening*  
C. *You are listening*                D. *You listen*
2. What \_\_\_\_\_ will happen?  
A. *are you thinking*                B. *do you think*                      C. *you think*
3. What \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend?  
A. *did you do*                          B. *you did do*                          C. *did you*
4. While I was working in the garden, \_\_\_\_\_ my back.  
A. *was hurting*                          B. *have hurt*                          C. *hurt*
5. Jane is back home from holiday now. \_\_\_\_\_ to Italy.  
A. *She has gone*                      B. *She has been*                      C. *She is been*
6. It's the first time he \_\_\_\_\_ a car.  
A. *has driven*                          B. *drove*                                  C. *drives*
7. Where have you been? I \_\_\_\_\_ for you for the last half an hour.  
A. *'m looking*                          B. *'ve been looking*                C. *'ve looked*
8. It's ages \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema.  
A. *that we don't go*                      B. *that we haven't gone*  
C. *that we didn't go*                      D. *since we went*
9. Mr. Clark \_\_\_\_\_ in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave it up.  
A. *has been working*                B. *has worked*                      C. *worked*
10. I can't meet you tomorrow afternoon. I \_\_\_\_\_ tennis.  
A. *'ll play*                                  B. *'m playing*                          C. *play*

**Ex. 52. Use the Past Tense of the regular and irregular verbs in the brackets.**

***You Never Know What Will Happen***

A long time ago there (**live**) ... a poor Chinese peasant. One day a beautiful horse (**appear**) ... . When the peasant's friends (**see**) ... The horse, they (**say**) ... , "How lucky you are!"

The peasant (*respond*) ..., “You never know what will happen.” After two days, the horse (*run*) ... away. The peasant’s friends (*come*) ... and (*say*) ..., “What a terrible thing. How unlucky you are! The fine horse (*run*) ... away”. The peasant (*get, not*) ... excited. He simply (*say*) ..., “You never know what will happen.”

Exactly one week later, the horse (*return*) ..., and it (*bring*) ... three other horses. When the peasants friends (*see*) ... the horses, they said to their friend, “Oh. You are so lucky. You now have four horses to help you”. The peasant (*look*) ... at them and once again said, “You never know what will happen.”

The next morning the peasant’s oldest son was in the field. Suddenly one of the horses (*run*) ... into him, and the boy (*fall*) ... to the ground. He was badly hurt. He (*become*) ... crippled. Indeed, this was terrible, and many people (*come*) ... to the peasant and (*express*) ... their sorrow for his son’s misfortune. But the peasant simply said, “You never know what will happen.”

A month after the son’s accident, soldiers (*ride*) ... into the vil- lage. They (*shout*) ..., “There are problems along the border. We are taking every healthy young man to fight.” The soldiers (*take*) ... every other young man, but they (*take, not*) ... the peasant’s son. Every other young man (*fight*) ... in the border war, and every man (*die*) ... . But the peasant’s son (*live*) ... a long and happy life. As his father (*say*) ... , you never know what will happen.

**Ex. 53. Irregular verbs. Look at each sentence and at the three versions of the verb below it. Decide which version completes the sentence correctly.**

1. The girl was \_\_\_\_\_ from the show as she was too young to participate.  
*withdraw*                      *withdrawn*                      *withdrew*
2. Although she was \_\_\_\_\_ by a large bee, she didn’t have to go to hospital.  
*sting*                              *stang*                              *stung*
3. Those coffee beans are not \_\_\_\_\_. You can’t make coffee with them like that.  
*grinded*                      *ground*                      *grounded*
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ the country during the war and never returned.  
*fled*                              *fleed*                              *flew*

5. The problem \_\_\_\_\_ because he didn't have the right equipment to play in the game.  
*araised*                      *arised*                                      *arose*
6. Yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ that the weather would be bad but look, it's sunny.  
*forecast*                      *forecasted*                                      *forecunt*
7. He was \_\_\_\_\_ by a cricket ball and had to go to hospital.  
*strack*                      *striked*                                      *struck*
8. After she had washed the clothes, she \_\_\_\_\_ them and then put them on the line.  
*wrung*                      *wringed*                                      *wranged*
9. They say that the disease has \_\_\_\_\_ throughout the whole of western Africa.  
*spread*                      *spreaded*                                      *sprud*
10. The cloth has been \_\_\_\_\_ in the traditional way, using silk and gold thread.  
*weaved*                      *woven*                                      *woved*

**Ex. 54. Complete the story. Use the Past Simple of each verb.**

George Washington was the first president of the United States. He (*to live*) ... in a beautiful home in Virginia. His mother (*to have*) ... a special garden with a beautiful little cherry tree. Everyone (*to love*) ... that cherry tree. One day George (*to get*) ... a hatchet as a present. He (*to decide*) ... to try the hatchet. He (*to go*) ... to the cherry tree and (*to chop*) ... it down. As soon as he (*to see*) ... the tree on the ground, he (*to feel*) ... terrible. He (*to walk*) ... sadly back to the house and (*to go*) ... to his room. He (*to play, not*) ... that afternoon. He (*to eat, not*) ... that evening. That night George's father said, "Someone (*to chop*) ... down our cherry tree." George (*to decide*) ... to tell his father. He (*to walk*) ... toward his father and said, "I (*to do*) ... it. I (*to chop*) ... it down with my new hatchet. I cannot tell a lie." "Thank you for telling the truth," his father (*to say*) ... .

**Ex. 55. Choose the correct tense form of the verbs in the following sentences.**

1. "Why (*arrive*) ... you ... so late?" "I (*forget*) ... to set my alarm clock last night."
2. "There aren't any grapes. Who (*eat*) ... them all?" "I don't know. I know I (*eat, not*) ... them. I (*like, not*) ... grapes".

3. "I (*get*) ... a beautiful gift in the mail last week." "Who (*send*) ... it?" "Uncle Jim."

4. "What (*say*) ... his answering machine ... ?" "It says, "I'm sorry I (*miss*) ... your call. Please leave your name and a short message. Thank you. Have a nice day."

5. A: Let's study together. B: Gee, I'm not in the mood to study. I (*study*) ... all day yesterday. What (*do*) ... you ... yesterday? A: I (*play*) ... tennis.

6. "Where are the kids?" "Joan (*play*) ... outside, and Bob (*do*) ... homework." "What about Joan's homework?" "She (*do*) ... it last night".

7. "Where are the cookies?" "I (*hide*) ... them last night. — Why (*hide*) ... you ... them?" "I (*try*) ... to lose weight." "Well, I'm not. I (*want*) ... those cookies."

**Ex. 56. Correct the following sentences.**

1. I did went to the movies last night. 2. She didn't ate at the Chinese restaurant. 3. When they visited San Francisco? 4. Who you did call? 5. Who call you last night? 6. Why she called her mother this morning? 7. He had not any money. 8. Where fell you? 9. Did she drank a glass of milk? 10. Where was she find the ring? 11. You didn't finished your dinner.

**Ex. 57. Make the sentences interrogative using the Simple Past.**

1. be / Ann and Pete / out / last night. 2. go / Ann and Pete / to Exposition Center. 3. be / John / home / last night. 4. worry / Pete / about / last night / his mother. 5. be / you / in Europe / in 1990. 6. visit / you / the Eiffel Tower / that year . 7. be / your / parents / in Asia / last year . 8. take / you / a vacation / last summer . 9. buy / Olga / a sweater / yesterday. 10. be / the sweater / blue.

**Ex. 58. Use *there was, there were* and the Past tense of the following verbs: *sing, draw, feed, keep, put, win*.**

1. A: How was the concert? B: We enjoyed it. ... a very good singer. She ..... four songs. 2. A: That's a wonderful drawing. Who ... it? B: I did. ... two older men sitting near me on the train. I started to draw them on the train. I finished the picture at home. A: You're really talented! 3. A: Where did you buy that cowboy hat? B: I didn't

buy it. I ... it. A: When? B: Last Saturday. ... a carnival. I guessed the number of balls in the box. 4. A: We took the children to the Zoo on Sunday. B: Did they like it? A: Yes, they loved it! ... lions, tigers, elephants, and monkeys. Paul and Jane ... the monkeys peanuts, and the monkeys clapped their hands. 5. A: Did you listen the news last night? B: No, I didn't. A: ... a con-man in Texas. He became friends with older women. They gave him their money to invest, but he ... their money for himself instead. B: That's terrible. A: The police found out about him from the children of one of the women. The police arrested him and ... him in jail.

**Ex. 59. Insert *is, are, was, were* in the story.**

George Washington ... born in Virginia. He ... the first president of the United States. Before that, he ... the commander-in-chief of the Continental Army during the American Revolution. Washington stayed with his soldiers when conditions ... very bad. He ... a man with a strong sense of duty. Today, Washington's birthday ... a holiday. Most schools ... closed on that day. However, stores ... open on Washington's birthday, and there ... lots of Washington's birthday sales.

**Ex. 60. Complete the questions. Use *is there, are there, was there, were there*.**

1. ... a new moon last night? 2. ... any new students in class last week? 3. I'm hungry. ... a pizza place near here? 4. Traffic was heavy. ... an accident on the bridge this morning? 5. ... many senior citizens in your building now? 6. I'm hungry. ... any good restaurants near here? 7. ... a test yesterday? 8. ... thirty days in September? 9. You were late. ... a long line at the bank? 10. ... any cars on the highway?

**Ex. 61. Complete the dialogue. Use Simple Present, Present Continuous, or Simple Past tense of the verbs in brackets.**

A: Oh, excuse me! I (*step*) ... on your toe a minute ago?

B: Yes, but I (*be*) ... okay now. (*be*) ... you at the party last semester?

A: No, this (*be*) ... my first semester here.

A: Where (*be*) ... you from?

B: I (*be*) ... from Spain. What about you?

A: I (*be*) ... from Poland. When ... you (*come*) to New York?

B: I (*arrive*) ... here three months ago.

A: Where you (*live*) ... now?

B: In New Jersey with my uncle. He (*have*) ... a house there.

A: Your English (*be*) good. ... your uncle (*speak*) English with you?

B: No. He (*speak*) ... Spanish. How about you? ... you (*live*) with relatives?

A: No, I (*live*) ... with a friend. We (*try*) ... to speak English, but we usually (*speak*) ... Polish.

B: What ... you (*think*) ... about New York?

A: I (*like*) ... the excitement, but I (*like, not*) ... the dirt and the noise.

B: I (*agree*) with you. Oh, there (*be*) ... my English teacher. Look! She (*dance*) ... with one of the students?

A: Where?

B: She (*wear*) ... a yellow dress.

A: Wow! She (*be*) ... a good dancer.

B: She's a good teacher, too.

**Ex. 62. Complete the sentences by using the Past Continuous of the verbs: *answer, begin, climb, count, drive, eat, look, melt, sing, stand, walk*. Use each verb only one time.**

1. Fortunately I didn't get wet because I ... under a large tree when it began to rain. 2. I saw Don at the student cafeteria at lunch time. He ... a sandwich. 3. Mr. White asked an interesting question. The professor ... Mr. White's question when Mr. Gray rudely interrupted. 4. Robert didn't answer the phone when Sara called. He ... his favorite song in the shower and didn't hear the phone ring. 5. A: I saw a whale! B: Really? When? A: This morning. I ... on the beach when I heard a sudden "whoosh!" It was the spout of a huge gray whale. 6. Three people ... the east side of the mountain when the avalanche occurred. All three died. 7. A: Were you on time for the play last night? B: I drove as fast as I could. The play ... just as we walked in the door of the theatre. 8. Robert came in while I ... the money from the day's receipts. I completely lost track and had to start all over again. 9. It was difficult to ski because the temperature was rising and the snow ... . 10. A: What do you think was the cause of your accident? B: I know what caused it. Paul ... at the scenery while he ... the car. He simply didn't see the other car pull out from the right.



**Ex. 63. Use the Simple Past or the Past Continuous of each verb in the brackets.**

1. Last night Carol (*read*) a story to Billy when she (*fall*) asleep.  
2. When the storm (*begin*), Joan and Peter (*drive*) to Florida. 3. Bob (*play*) soccer when he (*break*) his toe. 4. Peter (*shave*) when he (*cut*) his chin. 5. When the accident (*occur*), it (*snow*). 6. While we (*dance*), he (*step*) on my toe. 7. I (*try*) to answer the last question when the bell (*ring*), but the teacher took my paper away. 8. While she (*prepare*) dinner, the lights (*go*) out. 9. Norma (*drive*) to Newton when a man (*hit*) her car. 10. When it (*start*) to rain, Ellen (*play*) tennis. 11. The telephone (*ring*) while I (*take*) a shower. When I (*get*) to the phone, it was too late. 12. We (*walk*) along Fifth Avenue in New York City when we (*meet*) an old friend. 13. When the visitors (*arrive*), she (*sleep*). 14. Our dog hates loud noises. When the workers (*start*) drilling the hole, the dog (*hide*) under the bed. 15. It (*rain*) when I (*fall*) and (*break*) my finger. 16. (*study*) you at the library when the blizzard (*begin*)? 17. Who (*drive*) when the accident (*happen*)? 18. (*paint*) they the house when it (*begin*) to rain? 19. (*watch*) you the news on TV when your father (*call*)? 20. While I (*walk*) to the library, I (*find*) a gold ring. 21. When the fire (*begin*), she (*call*) the fire department.

**Ex. 64. Correct the sentences.**

1. We slept when the fire began. 2. Were you sleep last night at ten? 3. She gave to me it. 4. Will they cash me a check? 5. My brother isn't tall. My sister isn't too. 6. I wasn't understanding the teacher. 7. He isn't wearing boots now, but I saw him put on them this morning. 8. What happened while you slept? 9. I slept when an earthquake occurred. 10. I took a test when all the lights went out.

**Ex. 65. Complete the sentences with the Simple Past or the Past Continuous.**

1. It (*begin*) ... to rain while Ann and I (*walk*) ... to school.  
2. While I (*wash*) ... dishes, I (*drop*) ... a plate and (*break*) ... it. 3. I (*hit*) ... my thumb while I (*use*) ... the hammer. 4. While I (*walk*) ... under an apple tree, an apple (*fall*) ... and (*hit*) me on the head. 5. Last month, both my brother and my next-door neighbor were in Thailand, and neither of them (*know*) ... that the other was there. While they (*attend*) ... my daughter's wedding reception last week, my

neighbor (*mention*) ... her trip, and my brother was very surprised. It seems that they (*be*) ... in Bangkok for three days at exactly the same time and (*stay*) ... in hotels that were only a few blocks away from each other. 6. While I (*look*) ... at the computer screen, I (*start*) ... to feel a little dizzy, so I (*take*) ... a little break. While I (*take*) ... a short break outdoors and (*enjoy*) ... the warmth of the sun on my face, an elderly gentleman (*come*) ... up to me and (*ask*) ... for directions to the public library. After I (*tell*) ... him how to go there, he (*thank*) ... me and (*go*) ... on his way. Soon a big cloud (*come*) ... and (*cover*) ... the sun, so I (*go*) ... back inside to work.

**Ex. 66. Use the Simple Past or the Past Continuous.**

Late yesterday afternoon while I (*prepare*) ... dinner, the doorbell (*ring*) ... . I (*put*) ... everything down and (*rush*) ... to answer it. I (*open*) ... the door and (*smile*) ... at the stranger standing in my doorway. He (*hold*) ... a small vacuum cleaner. While he (*tell*) ... me about this wonderful vacuum cleaner that he wanted to sell me, the phone (*ring*) ... . I (*excuse*) ... myself and (*reach*) ... for the phone. While I (*try*) ... to talk on the phone and to listen to the vacuum cleaner salesman at the same time, my young son (*run*) ... up to me to tell me about the cat. The cat (*try*) ... to catch a big fish in my husband's prized aquarium. The fish (*swim*) ... on the bottom to avoid the cat's paw. I (*say*) ... goodbye to the vacuum salesman and (*shut*) ... the door. I (*say*) ... goodbye to the person on the phone and (*hang*) ... up. I (*yell*) ... at the cat and (*shoo*) ... her away from the fish. Then I (*sit*) ... down in an easy chair and (*catch*) ... my breath. While I (*sit*) ... there, the doorbell (*ring*) ... again. Then the phone (*ring*) ... . Then my son (*say*) ... "Mom! Mom! The dog is in the refrigerator!" I (*move, not*) ... . "What's next?" I said to myself.

**Ex. 67. Use the Simple Present, Present Continuous, Simple Past, or Past Continuous.**

**Part 1:**

*Situation:* Right now Tommy (*sit*) ... at the desk. He (*write*) ... in his grammar workbook. His roommate, Bert, (*sit*) ... at his desk, but he (*study, not*) ... . He (*stare*) ... out the window. Tommy (*want*) ... to know what Bert (*look*) ... at. Here is the dialogue:

T: Bert, what (*you, look*) ... at?

B: I (*watch*) ... the bicyclists. They are very skillful. I (*know, not*) ... how to ride a bike, so I (*admire*) ... anyone who can. Come

over to the window. Look at that guy in the blue shirt. He (*steer*) ... his bike with one hand while he (*drink*) ... a Coke with his other. And all the while, he (*weave*) ... in and out of the heavy street traffic and the pedestrian traffic. He (*seem*) ... fearless.

T: Riding a bike (*be, not*) ... as hard as it (*look*) ... . I'll teach you to ride a bicycle if you'd like.

B: Really? Great.

T: How come you don't know how to ride a bike?

B: I never (*have*) ... a bike when I (*be*) ... a kid. My family (*be*) ... too poor. One time I (*try*) ... to learn on the bike of one of my friends, but all the other kids (*laugh*) ... at me. I never (*try*) ... again because I (*be*) ... too embarrassed. But I'd love to learn now! When can we start?

### Part 2:

Yesterday Tommy (*sit*) ... at his desk and (*write*) ... in his grammar workbook. His roommate, Bert, (*sit*) ... at his desk, but he (*study, not*) ... . He (*stare*) ... out the window. He (*watch*) ... bicyclists on the street below. Tommy (*walk*) ... over to the window. Bert (*point*) ... out one bicyclist in particular. This bicyclist (*steer*) ... with one hand while he (*drink*) ... a Coke with the other. And all the while, he (*weave*) ... in and out of the heavy traffic. To Bert, the bicyclist (*seem*) ... fearless. Bert never (*learn*) ... how to ride a bike when he (*be*) ... a kid, so Tommy (*offer*) ... to teach him how. Bert (*accept*) ... gladly.

### Ex. 68. Open the brackets using the verbs in the Simple Past or Past Continuous.

1. They (*to translate*) ... a difficult text yesterday. 2. I (*to open*) ... the window at six o'clock yesterday. 3. You (*to go*) ... to the cinema yesterday? 4. I (*not to see*) ... Mike last week. 5. When I (*to open*) ... the door, my friends (*to sit*) ... around the table. 6. When you (*to begin*) ... doing your homework yesterday? 7. We (*to discuss*) ... the latest news from three till four yesterday. 8. When I (*to read*) ... the newspaper yesterday, I (*to find*) ... an interesting article on UFOs. 9. Lily (*to sweep*) ... the floor on Sunday. 10. Margo (*to sweep*) ... the floor from eleven till twelve on Sunday. 11. They (*to go*) ... to the wood last Sunday. 12. They (*to go*) ... to the wood last Sunday? 13. When they (*to sail*) ... down the river, they (*to see*) ... a little island. 14. We (*to work*) ... the whole morning yesterday. 15. Mother (*to cook*) ... dinner at three o'clock yester-

day. 16. She (*to finish*) ... cooking dinner at four o'clock yesterday. 17. At half past four yesterday we (*to have*) ... dinner. 18. "You (*to watch*) ... TV yesterday?" "Yes, we (*to watch*) ... TV the whole evening yesterday." 19. When you (*to go*) ... to bed yesterday? 20. At half past ten yesterday I (*to sleep*) ... . 21. When I (*to come*) ... home from school yesterday, my little brother (*to sit*) ... on the floor with all his toys around him. He (*to play*) ... with them. I (*to tell*) ... him to put his toys into his box as he (*to make*) ... too much noise.

**Ex. 69. Put the verbs into the correct tense and form**

1. ... a good time last weekend? (*you, have*). 2. I ... that film three times but I'd like to see it again (*see*). 3. She ... to Mary when I saw her in town (*talk*). 4. Where ... for your holidays next year? (*you, go*). 5. Be careful with that glass. If you drop it, it ... (*break*). 6. I usually ... with Joanna on Saturday nights but she's away this weekend (*go out*). 7. Kevin ... anything since he got up this morning (*not, eat*). 8. "Where's Annie?" "She ... the shopping at the moment" (*do*). 9. It was a beautiful morning. The sun ... and the birds ... (*shine*) (*sing*). 10. If you ... harder, you'll fail the exam (*not, study*).

**Ex. 70. Use one of the tenses: Present Indefinite, Past Indefinite, Present Continuous, Past Continuous.**

1. Nona (*to celebrate*) ... her birthday yesterday. Her room looked beautiful, there (*to be*) ... many flowers in it. When I (*to come*) ... in, somebody (*to play*) ... the piano, two or three pairs (*to dance*). 2. Listen! Somebody (*to play*) ... the piano. 3. I (*to like*) music very much. 4. When I (*to look*) out of the window, it (*to rain*) heavily and people (*to hurry*) ... along the streets. 5. "What you (*to do*) ... at seven o'clock yesterday?" "I (*to have*) ... supper." 6. When I (*to come*) ... home yesterday, I (*to see*) ... that all my family (*to sit*) ... round the table. Father (*to read*) ... a letter from my uncle who (*to live*) ... in London. 7. "Where you (*to be*) ... yesterday?" "I (*to be*) ... at home the whole day." "How strange. I (*to ring*) ... you up at two o'clock, but nobody (*to answer*) ... ." "Oh, I (*to be*) ... in the garden. I (*to read*) ... your book and (*not to hear*) ... the telephone. 8. "What you (*to do*) ... at five o'clock yesterday?" "I (*to work*) ... at the library." "I (*to be*) ... there, too, but I (*not to see*) ... you." 9. Yesterday I (*to work*) ... at my English from five till seven. 10. It (*to rain*) ... the whole day yesterday. 11. "Where your sister (*to be*) ... now?" "She (*to be*) ... in her room. She (*to do*) ... her homework."

**Ex. 71. Countable and uncountable nouns. Look at each sentence below and decide whether the word in bold is countable or uncountable. Write “C” in the space after the sentence if the word is countable or “U” if it is uncountable.**

1. The **information** I received was completely wrong. \_\_\_\_\_
2. She didn't take the doctor's **advice** and went on the holiday anyway. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We had lots of **work** to do yesterday so that's why I missed the part. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I usually take a **couple** of sandwiches to work with me. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It was the second **trip** she had made to the USA. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I love **chocolate**; I eat it all the time. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Don't forget that we have to put the **rubbish** out today. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The sports centre has got some new **equipment**. \_\_\_\_\_
9. That **restaurant** is excellent. I really recommend it. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Did you see the amount of **luggage** that Peter took with him? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 72. Choose the one word or phrase that best completes the sentence.**

1. Maureen needed some money yesterday, so she ... to the bank.  
(A) *didn't go* (B) *has gone* (C) *was going* (D) *went*
2. ... Maureen was getting cash at an ATM, someone came up behind her and robbed her.  
(A) *After* (B) *As soon as* (C) *Before* (D) *While*
3. The thief ... a T-shirt and blue jeans and had big tattoos all over his arms.  
(A) *was wearing* (B) *wearred* (C) *wearing* (D) *wore*
4. ... she realized what happened, Maureen ran to a phone, called the police, and reported the crime.  
(A) *As soon as* (B) *Before* (C) *During* (D) *While*
5. Luckily, she didn't have ... money.  
(A) *as much* (B) *enough* (C) *too little* (D) *very much*
6. But Maureen still didn't have ... to buy gas — she had to walk home.  
(A) *cash enough* (B) *enough cash* (C) *too much cash*  
(D) *very cash*
7. Later, the police told Maureen that she hadn't been ... . The thief had been standing near the bank and she should have noticed him.

- (A) *as careful* (B) *careful enough* (C) *enough careful*  
 (D) *less careful*
8. The next day, someone ... Maureen's purse, with all of her identification and credit cards, in a trash can.  
 (A) *find* (B) *found* (C) *was finding* (D) *was found*
9. Thai food is hotter than Japanese food; by *hotter*, I mean ...  
 (A) *as spicy* (B) *less spicy* (C) *spicier*  
 (D) *the spiciest*
10. It's ... for people who don't like spicy food.  
 (A) *as hot* (B) *hot enough* (C) *hotter* (D) *too hot*
11. It can be spicy hot like Indian food, but ... as Indian food.  
 (A) *as greasy* (B) *less greasy* (C) *more greasy*  
 (D) *not as greasy*
12. Thai cuisine is ... and more exotic than heavy French food.  
 (A) *as light* (B) *less light* (C) *lighter* (D) *more light*
13. Like the French chefs, Thai cooks use ... fresh herbs and spices.  
 (A) *enough* (B) *many* (C) *too few* (D) *too many*
14. *Sateh* was originally Indonesian, but the Indonesian dish isn't ... as the *sateh* from Thailand.  
 (A) *as spicy* (B) *less spicy* (C) *quite spicy* (D) *spicier*
15. In my opinion, of all the world's cuisines, Asian cooking is ....  
 (A) *delicious* (B) *more delicious* (C) *most delicious*  
 (D) *the most delicious*

**Ex. 73. Choose the correct variant.**

1. I ... in response to your letter of 3 March.  
 A. *'m writing* B. *write*
2. ... here when you were a student?  
 A. *Have you lived* B. *Did you live* C. *Have you been living*
3. I ... the flute in the youth orchestra when I was at school.  
 A. *was playing* B. *played* C. *'ve-been playing*
4. I ... she would make a success of everything she did.  
 A. *'d always been knowing* B. *'d always known*  
 C. *always was knowing*
5. I reckon 90 % of the population ... a mobile phone by 2006.  
 A. *are owning* B. *are going to own*
6. You need to get a move on if you ... there at 7 o'clock.  
 A. *are to be* B. *will have been* C. *will be*
7. The last I heard of Jo, she ... to Taiwan to teach English.

*A. was going off      B. is going off      C. goes off*

8. You ... a sleep first if you're going to drive all the way home tonight.

*A. 'd better to have      B. 'd better have      C. should to have*

9. It's pity you didn't come, you ... yourselves.

*A. would enjoy      B. had enjoyed      C. would have enjoyed*

10. He ... everything that was put in from of him, but now he's very fussy.

*A. used to eat      B. use to eat      C. was eating*

**Ex. 74. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be grammatically correct.**

1. North American food, on the other hand, is boring; (A) I think it's one of the (B) blander, (C) least (D) imaginative cuisines.
2. It uses too little (A) spices and herbs (B) and too (C) many (D) canned and frozen ingredients.
3. Other cooking around the world uses a much (A) wider (B) variety of herbs and spices than (C) the English are (D).
4. North Americans eat a lot of processed and frozen food, which has chemicals and is not (A) as healthful (B) than (C) diets with more (D) fresh, natural foods.
5. They also eat at fast-food restaurants, which serve greasy food with a lot of (A) calories. That's part of the reason that North Americans are much fatter (B) and less (C) healthy that (D) other nationalities.
6. Not all (A) North Americans eat fast food; some enjoy (B) trying international food very much, but to prepare that food at home isn't enough convenient (C) for them (D).
7. Yes, some have started (A) to change their attitude about food, but no enough (B) — the average North Americans still (C) eats (D) mashed potatoes, meat loaf, and Hamburger Helper.
8. If North Americans borrowed more (A) ideas from (B) the cuisines of their various ethnic communities, they could have some of a (C) most (D) fascinating cooking in the world.
9. Yesterday, while (A) they were driving (B) to work, (C) Natasha and her husband, Boris, were having (D) an accident.
10. While (A) Natasha stepped (B) on the brake, the car that was driving (C) behind them hit (D) their car.

11. The man who was driving (A) behind them was following (B) too closely (C) for (D) to stop.
12. As soon (A) one of the neighbours saw (B) the accident, (C) he called (D) the police.
13. An ambulance came (A) right away and (B) was taking (C) Natasha and Boris to the nearest (D) hospital.
14. Was (A) Natasha and her husband wearing (B) their seatbelts when (C) the accident occurred? (D)
15. Yes, they were, and they feel very lucky that they weren't hurt very much (A) and that the neighbours who saw (B) the accident enough cared (C) to call (D) the police.

**Ex. 75. Most of these sentences contain one mistake. Correct each one, or if there is no mistake, write *right*.**

1. The coffee is smelling wonderful. ...
2. Last year we visited the States. ...
3. The shop sank because the engineer wasn't calling for help until it was already thinking. ...
4. The reason I get fat is that I am always tasting things while I am cooking. ...
5. How is Jennifer? Does her health improve? ...
6. You're quite right, I'm completely agreeing with you. ...
7. What did you do after you left school? ...
8. Now I understand what you're trying to say! ...
9. I can't imagine why you were believing all those rumors. ...
10. Joseph looked forward to a peaceful weekend, when his brother arrived with all his friends from the football club. ...
11. Philippa heard the results of the election as she was driving to work, so she phoned me when she got there. ...
12. Oh, I'm sorry, I've spilt some tea. Where are you keeping the paper towels? ...

**Ex. 76. Future Time. Complete the sentences with *be going to*.**

1. A: What (*you, do*) ... this afternoon? B: I (*finish*) ... my report.
2. A: Where (*Roy, be*) ... later tonight? B: He (*be*) ... at Kim's house.
3. A: (*you, have*) ... a hamburger for lunch? B: I (*eat, not*) ... lunch. I don't have enough time.
4. A: (*you, finish*) ... this exercise soon? B: I (*finish*) ... it in less than a minute.
5. A: When (*you, call*) ... your sister? B: I (*call, not*) ... her. I (*write*) ... her a letter.
6. A: What



(*Lily, talk*) ... about in her speech tonight? B: She (*discuss*) ... the economy of Europe.

**Ex. 77. Complete the sentences. Use *I shall/will* + one of these verbs: *carry, do, eat, send, show, sit, stay*.**

1	My case is very heavy.	I ... it for you.
2	Enjoy your stay. Thank you.	I ... you a postcard.
3	I don't want this banana.	Well, I'm hungry. ... it.
4	Are you coming with me?	No, I don't think so. ... here.
5	Did you phone Jack?	Oh no, I forgot ... it now.
6	Do you want a chair?	No, it's okay. ... on the floor.
7	How do you use this camera?	Give it to me and ... you.

**Ex. 78. Complete the sentences. Use *I think I'll ...* or *I don't think I'll* and verbs: *buy, go, have, play*.**

1. It's cold ... out. 2. I'm hungry. I think ... something to eat. 3. I feel tired. I don't ... tennis. 4. This camera is too expensive. I ... it.

**Ex. 79. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Simple.**

1. I (*know*) ... the result in a week. 2. You (*be*) ... in home tonight? 3. You (*have*) ... time to help me tomorrow? 4. It (*matter*) ... if I don't come home till morning? 5. You (*be*) ... able to drive after another five lessons? 6. Do you think he (*recognize*) ... me? 7. Unless he runs he (*not catch*) ... the train. 8. He (*lend*) ... it to you if you ask him. 9. I hope I (*find*) ... him. 10. If petrol pipe attendants go on strike we (*not have*) ... any petrol. 11. He (*believe*) ... whatever you tell him. 12. I (*remember*) ... this day all my life. 13. Perhaps he (*arrive*) ... in time for lunch. 14. If he works well I (*pay*) ... him \$10. 15. I wonder how many of us still (*be*) ... here next year. 16. If you think it over you (*see*) ... that I am right. 17. If you learn another language you (*get*) ... better job. 18. I am sure that you (*like*) ... our new house. 19. Newspaper announcement: "The President (*drive*) along the High Street in an open carriage." 20. He (*mind*) ... if I bring my dog? 21. You (*need*) ... a visa if you are going to Spain. 22. You (*feel*) ... better when you've had a meal. 23. He (*be*) ... offended if you don't invite him. 24. Papers (*not be*) ... delivered on the Bank Holiday. 25. I hope he (*remember*) ... to buy milk. 26. If you leave your skateboard on the path someone (*fall*) ... over it.

27. If they fall over it and hurt themselves they (*sue*) ... you. 28. If you want twenty cigarettes you (*have*) ... to give me more money. 29. Notice: "The government (*not be*) ... responsible for articles left on the seats." 30 If you drop this it (*explode*)... . 31 What your father (*say*) ... when he hears about this accident?

**Ex. 80. Complete the sentences with *will* or *won't* + probably.**

1. The clouds are leaving, and the sun is coming out. It ... rain anymore. 2. The weather is cold today. There's no reason to expect the weather to change. It ... be cold tomorrow, too. 3. John, Sable and Kevin worked hard on this project. They ... turn in the best work. The other students didn't work as hard. 4. Ronald is having a very difficult time in advanced algebra. He didn't understand anything that happened in class today, and he ... understand tomorrow's class either. 5. John skipped lunch today. He ... eat as soon as he gets home. 6. I don't like parties. Ruth really wants me to come to her party, but I ... go. I'd rather stay home. 7. Conditions in the factory have been very bad for a long time. All people who work on the assembly line are angry. They ... go out on strike. 8. We are using up the earth's resources at a rapid speed rate. We ... continue to do so for years to come.

**Ex. 81. Complete the sentences with *be going to* or *will*.**

1. (*Speaker B is planning to listen to the news at six.*)

A: Why did you turn on the radio?

B: I ... listen to the news at six.

2. (*Speaker B didn't have a plan to show the other person how to solve the math problem, but she is glad to do it.*)

A: I can't figure out this math problem. Do you know how to do it?

B: Yes. Give me your pencil. I ... show you how to solve it.

3. (*Speaker B has made a plan. He is planning to lie down because he doesn't feel well.*)

A: What's the matter?

B: I don't feel well. I ... lie down for a little while. If anyone calls, tell them I'll call back later.

A: Okay. I hope you feel better.

4. (*Speaker B didn't plan to take the other person home. He is making the offer spontaneously. He thinks of the idea only after the other person talks about missing his bus.*)

A: Oh no! I wasn't watching the time. I missed my bus.

B: That's okay. I ... give you a ride home.

A: Hey, thanks!

5. (*Speaker B has a plan.*)

A: Why did you borrow money from the bank?

B: I ... buy a new pickup. I've already picked it out.

6. (*Speaker B does not have a plan.*)

A: Mom, can I have a candy?

B: No, but I ... buy an apple for you. How does that sound?

A: Okay, I guess.

7. (*Speaker B has already made plans about what to wear. Then Speaker B makes a spontaneous offer.*)

A: I can't figure out what to wear to the ball. It's formal, isn't it?

B: Yes. I ... wear a floor-length gown.

A: Maybe I should wear my red gown with the big sleeves. But I think it needs cleaning.

B: I ... take it to the cleaner's for you when I go downtown this afternoon if you'd like.

A: Oh, thanks. That'll save me a trip.

**Ex. 82. Choose *be going to* or *will* for the following sentences.**

1. — Why are you looking for a screwdriver? — One of the kitchen chairs has a loose screw. I ... fix it.

2. — The computer printer isn't working again! What am I going to do? — Calm down. Give Bill a call. He ... fix it for you. It's probably just a loose connection.

3. — Are you going to the post office soon? — Yeah. Why? — I need to send this letter today. — I ... mail it for you. — Thanks.

4. — Why are you carrying that box? — I ... mail it to my sister. I'm on my way to the post office.

5. — Let's meet for a beer after work? — Sounds good to me. I ... meet you at the bar at six.

6. — Can you meet me for a beer after work? — I'd like to, but I can't. I ... stay at the office until seven tonight.

7. — It's grandfather's eighty-fifth birthday next Sunday. What ... you ... give him for his birthday? — I ... give him a walking stick that I made myself.

8. — I have a note for Jim from Julia. I don't know what to do with it. — Let me have it. I ... give it to him. He's in my class.  
— Thanks. But you have to promise not to read it.

**Ex. 83. Read the situations and write what you would say in each case. Use *will/shall, going to* or *the Present Continuous*.**

1. You make your friend a cup of sweet tea, then she tells you she doesn't take sugar. Offer to make her another one. "*I'm sorry, I'll make you another one*".
2. A friend asks you about your holiday plans. Tell her that you have decided not to go abroad this year. ...
3. A colleague asks you why you've brought your sports kit to the office. Explain that you have arranged to play tennis after work. ....
4. A friend is telling you about her wedding plans. Ask her where they plan to go for their honeymoon. ...
5. Your brother lent you some money last week. Promise to pay him back at the weekend. ....
6. Your sister has bought some very cheap CDs. You want to get some too and you've asked her several times where she got them, but she refuses to tell you. ....
7. Some friends have asked you to have lunch with them and then go to see a film. Agree to have lunch but refuse to go to the film because you've already seen it. ...
8. You failed an exam last year. Since then you've been working hard. Tell your teacher it's because you're determined not to fall again. ...
9. Your neighbor is playing loud music late at night. You get angry and ask him to turn the volume down. ...
10. You've been offered the starring role in a Hollywood film and have accepted. Yell your friends about it. ...

**Ex. 84. Complete the sentences with *going to* or *will*.**

1. — Why are you turning on the TV? — ... the news (*I, watch*).
2. Oh, I've just realized. I haven't got any money. — Haven't you? Well, don't worry. ... you some (*I, lend*).
3. — I've got a headache. — Have you? Wait there and ... an aspirin for you (*I, get*).
4. — Why are you filling that bucket with water? — ... the car (*I, wash*).
5. — I've decided to repair this room. — Oh, have you? What *colour* ... it? (*you,*

*paint*). 6. Where are you going? Are you going shopping? — Yes, ... something for dinner (*I, buy*). 7. — I don't know how to use this camera. — It's quite easy. ... you (*I, show*). 8. — What would you like to eat? — ... a sandwich, please (*I, have*). 9. — Did you post that letter for me? — Oh, I'm sorry. I completely forgot. ... do it now (*I, do*). 10. The ceiling in this room doesn't look very safe, does it? — No, it looks as if ... down (*it, fall*). 11. — Has Bob decided what to do when he leaves school? — Oh, yes. Everything is planned. ... a holiday for a few weeks and then ... a computer programming course (*he, have; he, do*).

**Ex. 85. For each of the following, decide on the best form to use: *be going to* or *will*.**

According to sociologists, some parents in North America find it difficult to let their children go away to college in another city or state/province after they graduate from high school. It is customary to send young people away to the best possible university. North Americans feel that by going away to college, their children ... learn to be independent and self-sufficient, two qualities that are valued in their culture.

These traditional parents, however, are worried about their children's safety. They're afraid that something bad ... happen to their son or daughter and they ... be [*negative*] able to protect them. Some parents don't think their children ... be successful on their own. They're afraid that the young people ... fail, that they ... be [*negative*] able to do with everything, such as studying, doing laundry, and taking care of themselves. College officials and students say that these parents are also worried that their sons and daughters ... forget their family backgrounds and ... want [*negative*] to go back home.

Many young high school graduates, on the other hand, want to go away to college. Marilyn Stanford, a senior at Houston High School, said to her parents, "Look, I ... be 18 soon and legally I ... be able to leave, with or without your permission." Other students are more sensitive when they convince their parents. Sean Brown, another high school senior who just received a letter of acceptance from the University of Iowa, told his parents, "I ... answer this letter right away and I ... say "yes". And with my scholarship, I ... save you money, too. Some day you ... be proud of me." Still others don't even apply to colleges that are out of state. "My mom and dad are

super strict. I know what they ... say , so I ... apply to the local community college,” says Ramon Sierra.

**Ex. 86. Complete the conversation using the verbs given.**

*Jane and Tom run a shop together.*

**Monday**

*Jane:* I don't know what (1) *we're going to do (we, do)*. We've hardly made any money for ages.

*Tom:* I think we should advertise. We can send out leaflets.

*Jane:* Yes. (2) ... (*that, probably, get*) our name more widely known. But do you think (3) ... (*people, come*) into the shop?

*Tom:* Well, we could try advertising in the local paper.

*Jane:* That might be better. (4) ... (*I, phone*) and find out their rates. And what about local radio?

*Tom:* Good idea. (5) ... (*I, phone*) them?

*Jane:* OK, thanks.

**Tuesday**

*Jane:* We haven't got enough money to pay all advertising we need. I've been in touch with the bank. (6) ... (*I, see*) the manager on Friday.

*Tom:* (7) ... (*he, give*) us a loan, do you think?

*Jane:* I hope so.

**Friday At the bank.**

*Manager:* So you want to borrow some money. How do you want to spend it?

*Jane:* (8) ... (*we, advertise*) on the local radio and in the paper. We've planned it carefully. We only need £500.

*Manager:* Very well. (9) ... (*the bank, lend*) you the money. But you must pay us back in three months. Can you do that?

*Jane:* (10) ... (*we, do*) it, I promise.

*Manager:* Now, go and see the loans clerk and (11) ... (*he, help*) you fill in the necessary forms.

*Jane:* Thank you for your help.

*Manager:* You're welcome.

**Ex. 87. Time clauses. Combine the two sentences. Pay special attention to the verb tense you use in the time clause.**

**Model:** I'll call Margo tomorrow. I'll tell her the good news (*when*).

*When I call Margo tomorrow, I'll tell her the good news.*

*Or: I'll tell Margo the good news when I call her tomorrow.*

1. Ann will lock all the doors. She will go to bed (*before*). 2. I'm going to be in London for two days. I'm going to visit the Tate Museum (*when*). 3. The show will start. The curtain will go up (*as soon as*). 4. Nigel is going to change the oil in his car. He is going to take a bath (*after*). 5. We'll call you. We'll drive over to pick you up (*before*). 6. I'll call you. I'll get an answer from the bank about the loan (*when*). 7. I'll get my paycheck. I'll pay my rent (*as soon as*).

**Ex. 88. If-clauses, Future. Choose the correct form of the verbs.**

1. If I *miss*, *I'll miss* the bus this morning, I'll get a taxi instead.
2. We'll have to go without Pete if *he doesn't arrive*, *won't arrive* soon.
3. They *won't refund*, *didn't refund* your money if you haven't kept your receipt.
4. Will you send me a postcard when *you reach*, *you'll reach* Mexico?
5. If I make some coffee, *do you cut*, *will you cut* the cake?
6. *Did you work*, *would you work* harder if you were better paid?
7. If you *don't complain*, *didn't complain* so much, you might be more popular.
8. Please don't sign any contracts before *I'm checking*, *I have checked* them.
9. *Weren't my friends*, *wouldn't my friends* be envious if they could only see me now!

**Ex. 89. Use the given verbs. Use Simple Present and *will*, *won't*.**

1. I (*take, read*) ... the textbook before I ... the final exam. 2. Mr. White (*return, call*) ... his wife as soon as he ... to the hotel tonight. 3. (*be, not; come*) I ... home tomorrow when the painters ... to paint my apartment. Someone else will have to let them in. 4. (*prepare, go*) Before I ... to my job interview tomorrow, I ... a list of questions I want to ask about the company. 5. (*visit, take*) When Julia ... us this weekend, we ... her to our favorite seafood restaurant. 6. (*find, move, graduate*) Sue ... out of her parent's house after she ... from school next month and ... a job.

**Ex. 90. If-clauses. Use the Simple Present and *will* / *won't* of the given verbs.**

1. If it ... cold and rainy tomorrow morning, I ... jogging (*not go; be*).
2. If I ... a job soon, I ... you the money I owe you (*get, pay*).
3. The boss ... very disappointed if you ... to the meeting tomorrow

(*not go; be*). 4. I ... taking these pills if Dr. Matthews ... me it's okay (*stop; tell*). 5. If Elena ... home on time tonight, we ... dinner at 6:30. If she ... late, dinner ... late (*get; be; eat*).

**Ex. 91. Put the verbs in brackets into the Simple Present or the Future Simple.**

1. When he (*return*) ... I'll give him the key. 2. He'll be ready as soon as you (*be*) ... . 3. I'll stay in bed till the clock (*strike*) ... seven. 4. She (*be*) ... delighted when she (*hear*) ... this. 5. When the laundry (*come*) ... I (*have*) ... some clean handkerchiefs. 6. I (*buy, not*) ... tomatoes till the price (*come*) ... down. 7. Stay here till the lights (*turn*) ... green. 8. When it (*get*) ... cold I (*lit*) ... the fire. 9. The lift (*not stop*) ... until you press the button. 10. She (*have*) ... to behave better when she (*go*) ... to school. 11. When you look at yourself in the glass you (*see*) ... what I mean. 12. He (*be*) ... here before you go. 13. I (*lend*) ... you my cassette recorder whenever you want it. 14. He (*wake*) ... up when we turn the lights on. 15. He (*ring*) ... us up when he (*arrive*) ... in England.? 16. He (*wash up*) ... before he (*go*) ... to bed. 17. I (*not come*) ... to London till the bus strike (*be*) ... over. 18. I (*give*) ... the children their dinner before he (*come*) ... home. 19. They will be astonished when they (*see*) ... how slowly he (*work*) ... . 20. I (*pay*) ... you when I (*get*) ... my cheque. 21. I (*go*) ... on doing it until he (*tell*) ... me to stop. 22. I (*buy*) ... that house when I (*have*) ... enough money. 23. We'll have to stay here till the tide (*go*) out ... . 24. When the National Anthem (*begin*) ... the audience will stand up. 25. When the fog (*lift*) ... we'll be able to see where we are. 26. The fridge (*continue*) ... to make that noise till we have it repaired. 27. As soon as the holidays begin this beach (*become*) ... very crowded. 28. The car (*not move*) ... till you take the brake off. 29. The alarm clock (*go on*) ... ringing till you (*press*) ... this button. 30. As soon as she (*learn*) ... to type I'll get her a job. 31. Look before you (*leap*) ... . 32. We (*have*) ... to stay on this desert island till we can repair our boat. 33. Don't count on salary increase before you actually (*get*) ... it. 34. When winter (*begin*) ... the swallows will fly away to a warmer country. 35. We can't make any decision till he (*arrive*) ... here.

**Ex. 92. Read the following story. Rewrite it changing the events from the Past to Future.**

Yesterday morning *was* an ordinary morning. I *got* up at 6:30. I *washed* my face and *brushed* my teeth. Then I *put* on my jeans and



a sweater. I **went** to the kitchen and **started** the electric coffee maker. Then I **walked** down my driveway to get the morning paper. While I **was walking** to get the paper, I **saw** a deer. It **was eating** the flowers in my garden. After I **watched** the deer for a little while, I **made** some noise to make the deer run away before it **destroyed** my flowers. As soon as I **got** back to the kitchen, I **poured** myself a cup of coffee and **opened** the morning paper. While I **was reading** the paper, my teenage daughter **came** downstairs. We **talked** about her plans for the day. I **helped** her with her breakfast and **made** a lunch for her to take to school. After we **said** goodbye, I **ate** some fruit and cereal and **finished** reading the newspaper. Then I **went** to my office. My office **is** in my home. My office **has** a desk, a computer, a radio, a TV set, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I **worked** all morning. While I **was working**, the phone **rang** many times. I **talked** to many people. At 11:30, I **went** to the kitchen and **made** a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it **was** an ordinary morning.

**Ex. 93. Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate Present or Future forms.**

1. Bill Haynes, author of the immensely popular novel “Black Roses,” (1) ... (**write**) a new novel. “I (2) ... (**start**) next Monday – or at least that’s the plan,” says Bill. “It’s amazing to think that by next year it (3) ... (**be**) ten years since I last picked up a pen.” Despite his long break, Bill is confident. “I think this book (4) ... (**be**) even better than “Roses.” I (5) ... (**include**) the usual elements of action and adventure but this time there (6) ... (**be**) some romance too. I hope it (7) ... (**be**) successful.” Of course, we (8) ... (**not/know**) until it (9) ... (**be, published**) next year.

2. The staff of Cottenhan Primary School (1) ... (**hold**) an open day on August 21<sup>st</sup>. In the morning you (2) ... (**be able to**) meet your child’s teachers. At 12.30 the Headmaster, Mr. Patterson, (3) ... (**show**) the plans for the new adventure playground. We hope that this (4) ... (**finish**) by Christmas. If your child (5) ... (**start**) school this September, bring him or her along! The programme (6) ... (**begin**) at 9 a.m. See you there!

3. Jeanne and Paul (1) ... (**move**) to London next month. Paul is being transferred there and Jeanne hopes she (2) ... (**find**) a job by

the time they (3) ... (*move*) there. They (4) ... (*drive*) down next weekend to look for a flat. They hope they (5) ... (*find*) something in a nice area, but with prices the way they are, they will have to be satisfied with whatever they (6) ... (*find*). Jeanne is afraid she (7) ... (*miss*) living in Nottingham, but Paul is convinced that they (8) ... (*be*) happier in London because there is so much more to do there.

4. "Where (1) ... (*you, go*) on holiday this year Laura?"

"I don't know Sue. What about you?"

"We (2) ... (*probably, go*) to Spain again. But as I (3) ... (*get*) a pay rise very soon, I'd like to go somewhere more glamorous. I think, I (4) ... (*get*) some brochures from the travel agent tomorrow, so if you want, I (5) ... (*pick up*) a couple for you as well".

"Good idea. With any luck, we (6) ... (*decide*) where to go by the time summer (7) ... (*come*)".

5. Dear Anna,

I got the job! I (1) ... (*leave*) for Africa in two weeks. It's a shame I (2) ... (*not, see*) you before I (3) ... (*go*). For the first six months I (4) ... (*work*) in a village school, teaching English and Maths. (5) ... (*you, be able*) to visit me? If not, by the time I (6) ... (*see*) you again, so much (7) ... (*happen*) to us both that it'll take us hours to catch up on the news.

*Lots of love  
Danielle*

#### Ex. 94. Fill in the correct present or future forms.

If you (1) ... (*want*) to travel long distances on your bicycle, you must learn how to mend a puncture. As soon as your tyre (2) ... (*become*) flat, get off the bike or you (3) ... (*damage*) the wheel. Then turn the bicycle upside down. Once it (4) ... (*be*) in position, remove the tyre using tyre-levers or, if you (5) ... (*have*) nothing else, use spoons. When the tyre (6) ... (*be*) off, pump up the inner-tube. Put it in some water and turn it until you (7) ... (*see*) bubbles coming from it. This is your puncture. Before you (8) ... (*apply*) the patch, you must clean and dry the area around the hole. After this you (9) ... (*put*) glue around the hole and wait until it (10) ... (*dry*) a little. Then select a suitably sized patch, stick the patch over the hole and don't forget to put some chalk over it. Unless you do this, the inner-tube (11) ... (*stick*) to the inside of the tyre. Replace the tube,

pump up the tyre and ride away. I don't know if you (12) ... (**be able to**) remember all this, but it's worth trying because you never know when it (13) ... (**be**) useful to you.

**Ex. 95. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate tense forms of the verbs in brackets.**

More than two hundred years ago, people (**make**) ... their own clothes. They (**have, not**) ... machines for making clothes. There (**be, not**) ... any clothing factories. People (**wear**) ... homemade clothes that were sewn by hand. Today, very few people (**make**) ... their own clothes. Clothing (**come**) ... ready-made from factories. People (**buy**) ... almost all their clothes from stores. The modern clothing industry (**be**) ... international. As a result, people from different countries often (**wear**) ... similar clothes. For example, people in many different countries throughout the world (**wear**) ... jeans and T-shirts. However, regional differences in clothing still (**exist**) ... . For instance, people of the Arabian deserts (**wear**) ... loose, flowing robes to protect themselves from the heat and of the sun. In northern Europe, fur hats (**be**) ... common in the winter. In the future, there (**be, probably**) ... fewer and fewer differences in clothing in the world. People throughout the world (**wear**) ... clothes from same factories. (**we all, dress**) ... almost alike in the future? TV shows and movies about the future often (**show**) ... everybody in a uniform of some kind. What (**you, think**) ... ?

**Ex. 96. Complete the sentences with suitable tense forms of the verbs.**

Karen, Emily and Anne all (**go**) ... to college together 20 years ago. They (**have**) ... a wonderful time and (**learn**) ... a lot. Now, the three of them (**work**) ... at the same insurance company. They (**eat**) ... lunch together every day and sometimes (**tell**) ... stories about their school days.

Yesterday, they (**remember**) ... a funny accident at a special banquet during their sophomore year. At this dinner, they (**sit**) ... at the same table as the president of the university. Everything (**go**) ... along fine, but then disaster (**strike**) ... . To make a long story short, Karen (**spill**) ... a serving dish full of spaghetti onto the president. Karen (**be**) ... terribly embarrassed. She (**apologize**) ... profusely and (**leave**) ... the banquet room in tears.

Now, twenty years later, the three woman (**remember**) ... every detail, especially the look on the president's face. When they (**tell**) ... that story at lunch yesterday, they (**laugh**) ... until tears streamed down their faces. The spaghetti incident (**be, not**) ... funny when it happened, but it (**be**) ... to the women now. Terrible embarrassments that we suffer when we (**be**) ... young often seem funny when we (**be**) ... older. As we (**get**) ... older, we (**get**) ... more tolerant of our own foibles. Right now you (**be**) ... young. When you (**be**) ... older, you (**smile**) ... with amusement about some of the seemingly terrible and embarrassing things that happen to you as a young adult.

**Ex. 97. Use the necessary form of the verb in brackets.**

1. This morning, Roy (**comb**) ... his hair when the comb (**break**) ... . So he (**finish**) ... combing his hair with his fingers and (**rush**) ... out the door to class. 2. I'm exhausted! When I (**get**) ... home tonight, I (**read**) ... the paper and (**watch**) ... the news. I (**do, not**) ... any work around the house. 3. A: My cousin (**have**) ... a new cat. She now (**have**) ... four cats. B: Why (**she, have**) ... so many? A: To catch the mice in her house. B: (**you, have**) ... any cats? A: No, and I (**get, not**) any. I (**have, not**) mice in my house. 4. — Ouch! — What happened? — I (**cut**) ... my finger. — It (**bleed**) ... ! — I know! — Put pressure on it. I (**get**) ... some antibiotic and a bandage. — Thanks. 5. A: (**you, take**) ... the kids to the amusement park tomorrow morning? B: Yes. It (**open**) ... at 10:00. If we (**leave**) ... here at 9:30, we (**get, probably**) ... there at 9:55. The kids can be the first ones in the park. 6. A: Your phone (**ring**) ... . B: I (**know**) ... . A: (**you, answer**) ... it? B: No. A: (**you, want**) ... me to get it? B: No, thanks. A: Why (**you, want, not**) ... to answer your phone? B: I (**expect**) ... another call from the bill collector. I have a bunch of bills I haven't paid. I (**want, not**) ... to talk to her. A: Oh. 7. My grandmother used to say, "If adversity (**destroy, not**) ... you, it will strengthen you." In other words, if you (**learn**) ... to survive bad times and bad luck, you will become a stronger person.

**Ex. 98. Make the sentences grammatically correct.**

Most North American children begin to work at home, where they are having daily and/or weekly responsibilities, such as washing dishes and feeding the dog. Children receive a weekly allowance often, which is a small amount of money, like a salary, in exchange for doing these household chores or jobs. The children are

using these money to buy candy, soda, and other items they need for school. Others often save their allowance and making bigger purchases: computer games, a pet, a musical instrument, or extra activities at summer camp.

The purpose of the allowance is to teach children the value of money, and to teach them responsibility — when they work and do a good job, they aren't receive the money. North Americans often eat out at fast-food restaurants because they no have time to prepare food at home.

These restaurants serve almost anything from pizza to fried chicken to good old hamburgers; some people eat inside, and others stay in their car and buying food from the drive-through window.

Some Americans hardly never eat at home; they depend on these inexpensive restaurants for their meals.

For example, never my brother prepares his own food at home — he always goes out to the fast-food restaurants and eats hamburgers and French fries.

Are you think it is healthy to eat that salty, processed, overcooked food?

Ron and Sue, a modern young couple, hardly never do anything without a plan — they always talk together about plans for their jobs, their home, and their family.

Sue is expecting; next month she and Ron are going to have a baby. Their doctor will say that Sue is having a normal pregnancy.

Sue and Ron are knowing what they are going to name the baby. If it is a girl, they'll name her Susan, and if it is a boy, they will name him Richard.

Sue is following all the doctor's instructions. She's reading a lot of books about pregnancy and childbirth, and she won't take classes at the local hospital. When the time comes, she'll be ready.

It's time! Sue is going to have her baby very soon. She will need to go to the hospital right now, but Ron can't find the car keys.

**Ex. 99. Each sentence contains an error. Find and correct the errors. Rewrite each sentence with correct answers so that the meaning stays the same.**

1. I'm a student in the University of Jordan. 2. She asked me what was the time. 3. I'm afraid I speak English very bad. 4. Of course, there are also bad things about living in a city. 5. I've been in Paris three times. 6. I've been in the hospital to see Wendy.

7. I enjoy riding a bicycle and playing badminton. 8. Before my breakfast I usually go for a run. 9. It's a pity that you were absent from the training session. 10. Her car was involved in a big accident. 11. After the run, I had an ache in my legs. 12. The other ingredients are then added into the mixture. 13. Although the film has its advantages, it also has a serious flaw. 14. She doesn't have any friend. 15. She gave me a good advice. 16. After a week we're going to Italy. 17. I'll phone you again in five minutes. 18. They have two children in the age of 8 and 12. 19. Walking along the city after dark is not a good idea. 20. All aircrafts have to be checked and refuelled. 21. I have just seen your advertisement about a Chinese cook. 22. I went back into the house to bring my sunglasses. 23. I prefer classic music to pop. 24. The dancers were dressed in their national clothes. 25. My wallet colour is black. 26. He was afraid of his father and didn't want to come back home. 27. I was busy with cooking dinner. 28. Would you like me to bring you home?

### Present Perfect Tense

**Ex. 100. Use the Present Perfect in the following sentences.**

1. A: (*you, ever, eat*) ... pepperoni pizza? B: Yes, I ... . I (*eat*) ... pepperoni pizza many times.
2. A: (*you, ever, talk*) ... to a famous person? B: Yes, I ... . I ... to a lot of famous people. Or: No, I ... . I (*never*) ... to a famous person.
3. A: (*Helen, ever, rent*) ... a car? B: Yes, she ... . She ... a car many times. Or: No, she ... . She (*never*) ... a car.
4. A: (*see, you, ever*) ... a shooting star? B: Yes, I ... . I ... a lot of shooting stars. Or: No, I ... . I (*never*) ... a shooting star.
5. A: (*catch, Jim, ever*) ... a big fish? B: Yes, he ... . He ... lots of big fish. Or: No, he (*never*) ... .
6. A: (*you, ever, have*) ... a bad sunburn? B: Yes, I ... . I ... a bad sunburn several times. Or: No, I ... I (*never*) ... a bad sunburn.

**Ex. 101. Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect of the following verbs and any words in brackets. Use each verb only one time: *eat, look, save, use, give, play, sleep, wear, improve, rise, speak, win.***

1. People ... sheep's wool to make clothing for centuries. 2. The night is over. It's daytime now. The sun ... . 3. I (*never*) ... golf, but

I'd like to. It looks like fun. 4. Our team is great. They ... all of their games so far this year. They haven't lost a single game. 5. Lily must be angry with me. She (**not**) ... one word to me all evening. I wonder what I did to make her angry. 6. The cat must be sick. He (**not**) ... any food for two days. We'd better call the vet. 7. Our teacher ... us a lot of tests and quizzes since the beginning of the term. 8. We put a little money in our savings account every month. We want to buy a car, but we (**not**) ... enough money yet. We'll have enough in a few more months. 9. (**you, ever**) ... outdoors for the entire night? I mean without a tent, with nothing between you and stars. 10. My aunt puts on a wig whenever she goes out, but I (**never**) ... a wig in my life. 11. Paul's health ... a lot since he started eating the right kinds of food, exercising regularly, and handling the stress in his life. He's never felt better. 12. I can't find my keys. I ... everywhere – in all my pockets, in my briefcase, in my desk. They're gone.

**Ex. 102. Complete the sentences using Present Perfect with *just, already, yet***

1. After lunch you go to see a friend at her home. She says: "Would you like something to eat?" You say: "No, thank you. I ... (**have lunch**)." 2. Bill goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says: "Can I speak to Bill?" You say: "I'm afraid, he ... (**go out**)." 3. You are eating at the restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away. You say: "Wait a minute! I ... (**not, finish**)." 4. You are going to a restaurant this evening. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says: "Shall I phone to reserve a table?" You say: "No, I ... it." (**do**) . 5. You know that a friend of yours is looking for a job. Perhaps he has been successful. Ask him. You say: ... (**find**)? 6. Alice went to the bank, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks: "Is Alice still at the bank?" You say: "No, ... (**come back**)."

**Ex. 103. Ask questions "have you ... before?" to the sentences and give negative answers using "this is the first time I've ever..."**

1. Roy is driving a car but he's very nervous and not sure what to do. You ask: "...?" He says: "No, ..."
2. Felix is playing tennis. He's not very good and doesn't know the rules. You ask: "...?" He says: "No, ..."

3. Sara is riding a horse. She doesn't look very confident or comfortable. You ask: "...?" She says: "No, ...".
4. Mary is in New York. She has just arrived and it's very new for her. You ask: "...?" She says: "No ...".

**Ex. 104. Open the brackets using the Simple Past or the Present Perfect of the verbs.**

1. I (*begin*) ... a new diet and exercise program last week. I (*begin*) ... lots of programs and diets in my lifetime. 2. I (*bend*) ... down to pick up my young son from his crib this morning. I (*bend*) ... down to pick him up many times since he was born. 3. The radio (*broadcast*) ... news about the terrible earthquake in Iran last week. The radio (*broadcast*) ... news about Iran every day since the earthquake occurred. 4. I (*catch*) ... a cold last week. I (*catch*) ... a lot of colds in my life. 5. A tourist (*come*) ... into Mr. White's jewelry store after lunch. A lot of tourists (*come*) ... into his store since he opened it last year. 6. The workers (*dig*) ... a hole to fix the leak in the water pipe. They (*dig*) ... many holes to fix water leaks since the earthquake. 7. The artist (*draw*) ... a picture of a sunset yesterday. He (*draw*) ... many pictures of sunsets in her lifetime. 8. I (*feed*) ... birds in the park every day since I lost my job. 9. We (*fight*) ... a war last year. 10. I (*cut*) ... some flowers in my garden yesterday. 11. I (*forget*) ... to turn off the stove after dinner. 12. The children (*hide*) ... in the basement often since they discovered a secret place there. 13. The baseball player (*hit*) ... a lot of homeruns since he joined our team. 14. My husband (*hold*) ... the door open for me when we entered the restaurant. 15. During the discussion yesterday, I (*keep*) ... my opinion to myself. 16. Mary (*lead*) ... the group discussion at the conference. 17. I (*meet*) ... a lot of new people since I started going to school here. 18. I (*ride*) ... the bus to work many times since I got a job downtown.

**Ex. 105. Choose Simple Past or Present Perfect of the verbs.**

1. I (*go*) ... to every play at the local theatre so far this year. 2. My whole family (*go*) ... to the play last weekend. 3. Jane (*give*) ... me a ride home today. 4. (*she, give, ever*) ... you a ride home since she started working in your department? 5. I (*fall*) ... down many times in my life, but never hard enough to really hurt myself or break a bone. 6. Mike (*fall*) ... down many times during football practice



yesterday. 7. (*you, ever, break*) ... a bone in your body? 8. I (*break*) ... my leg when I (*be*) ... ten years old. I jumped off the roof of my house. 9. In my lifetime, I (*shake*) ... hands with a famous movie star. 10. In 1990, I (*shake*) ... hands with a famous soccer player. 11. I (*hear*) ... you practicing your trumpet late last night. 12. In fact, I (*hear*) ... you practicing your trumpet every night for two weeks. 13. Becky is a commercial airline pilot. Yesterday she (*fly*) ... from Tokyo to Los Angeles. 14. Garry (*fly*) ... to many places in the world since he became a pilot. 15. Carol really likes her new leather jacket. She (*wear*) ... it every day since she bought it. 16. She (*wear*) ... her new leather jacket to the opera last night. 17. Ms. Black (*teach*) ... math at the local high school since 1995. 18. She (*teach*) ... in Kiev last year on an exchange program. 19. In your lifetime, (*find, you, ever*) ... something really valuable? 20. My sister (*find*) ... a very expensive diamond ring in the park last year.

**Ex. 106. Present Perfect and Past Simple. Choose the correct form of the verb.**

1. My sister (*has been, was interested*) in medicine ever since she *has been, was* a child. 2. How long (*have you studied, did you study*) before you *have qualified, qualified*? 3. Where (*have you first met, did you first meet*) your husband? 4. Is it the first time (*you've cooked, you cooked*) pasta? 5. We (*have wanted, wanted*) to go to the theatre last night, but there (*haven't been, weren't*) any seats. 6. Oh, dear. What can we do? I'm sure something dreadful (*has happened, happened; we've been waiting, we waited*) over an hour and (*he hasn't phoned, hasn't been phoning*) yet. 7. We (*have posted, posted*) the parcel three weeks ago. If you still (*haven't received, didn't receive*) it, please inform us immediately.

**Ex. 107. Use Present Continuous or Present Perfect.**

1. What you (*to talk*) ... about? 2. We just (*to talk*) ... about it. 3. He just (*to say*) ... something about it. 4. She (*to tell*) ... them some interesting story. 5. He (*to tell*) ... us nothing about it. 6. She (*to tell*) ... them some stories about dogs. 7. We have (*to have*) ... two lessons today. 8. They (*to have*) ... a meeting at the moment. 9. She (*not to speak*) ... yet. 10. They (*to ask*) ... me several questions. 11. He already (*to learn*) ... the rule. 12. I'm busy. I (*to write*) ... an exercise. 13. What he (*to do*)...? — He (*to read*) ... a newspaper. 14. (*to read*)

you any stories by Jack London? 15. What you (*to do*) ... here? — I (*to write*) ... a letter to my friend. 16. Who (*to write*) ... this article? 17. What language you (*to study*) ...? 18. We already (*to learn*) ... a lot of English words. 19. Who (*to teach*) ... you to do it? 20. (*you, to find*) ... the book?

**Ex. 108. Use the verbs in Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

1. The sun (*not to rise*) ... yet, but the sky in the east is getting lighter every minute. 2. I (*to see*) ... you walking along the street the other day with a heavy bag. 3. I (*not to read*) the newspaper today. 4. It is very late, and trams (*to stop*) ... running: we must find a taxi to get home. 5. How many times you (*to be*) ... to Paris? 6. At last I (*to translate*) ... this article: now I shall have a little rest? 7. We (*to go*) ... to the country yesterday, but the rain ( *to spoil* ) the pleasure. 8. My watch was going in the morning, but now it (*to stop*)... . 9. The lecture (*not yet to begin*) ... and the students are talking in the classroom. 10. She just (*to go*) ... out. 11. She (*to leave*) ... the room a moment ago. 12. We (*not to solve*) ... the problem yet. 13. When it all (*to happen*) ...? 14. The morning was cold and rainy, but since ten o'clock the weather (*to change*) ... and now the sun is shining brightly. 15. Show me the which you (*to make*) ... . 16. Oh, how dark it is! A large black cloud (*to cover*) ... the sky. I think it will start raining in a few minutes. 17. Oh, close the window! Look, all my papers (*to fall*) ... on the floor because of the wind. 18. “When you (*to open*) ... the window?” “I (*open*) ... it ten minutes ago.”

**Ex. 109. Use the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

1. After I took Roy to school, I (*to drive*) ... straight to work. 2. I'm an experienced driver, but I (*never, to drive*) ... a bus or a big truck. 3. I (*to sing*) ... a duet with my mother at the art benefit last night. 4. We (*to sing*) ... together ever since I was a small child. 5. I (*never, to run*) in a marathon race, and I don't intend to. 6. I'm out of breath because I (*to run*) ... all my way over here. 7. Last night, my brother (*to tell*) ... me a secret. 8. He (*to tell*) ... me a lot of secrets in his lifetime. 8. When I visited London last spring, I (*to stand*) ... in the main gallery and felt a great sense of history. 9. Many great world leaders (*to stand*) ... there over years. 10. I (*to spend*) ... all of my money at the mall yesterday. 11. I don't have my rent money this month. I (*already, to spend*) ... it on other things. 12. I consider my-

self fortunate because I (*to make*) ... many good friends in my lifetime. 13. I (*to make*) ... a terrible mistake last night . I forgot that my friend had invited me to his apartment for dinner. 14. The price of flour (*to rise*) ... a lot since 1996. 15. When his name was announced, Nick (*to rise*) ... from his seat and walked to the podium to receive his award. 16. I (*to feel*) ... terrible yesterday, so I stayed in bed. 17. I (*to feel*) ... terrible for a week now. I'd better see a doctor.

**Ex. 110. Put the verbs from the box in the correct form, Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

a) realize b) see c) take d) spend e) replace f) become  
g) be h) enable i) really j) improve k) disappear l) take  
m) become n) not/to o) bring p) solve

Twenty years ago few people (1) ... that computers were about to become part of our daily lives. This short period of time (2) ... enormous changes, in business, education and public administration. Jobs which (3) ... weeks to complete in the past, are now carried out in minutes. Clerks who (4) ... all day copying and checking calculations are now freed from these tedious tasks. In offices the soft hum and clicking of word processors (5) ... the clatter of typewriters. Schoolchildren (6) ... as familiar with hardware and software as their parents (7) ... with pencils and exercise books. Computerization of public records (8) ... government departments to analyze the needs of citizens in detail. Some of us may wonder, however, whether life (9) ... as a result of these changes. Many jobs (10) ... , for example, when intelligent machines (11) ... over the work. Employers complain that clerical staff (12) ... dependent on calculators and cannot do simple arithmetic. There are fears that governments (13) ... enough to ensure that personal information held on computers is really kept secret. Certainly, many people may now be wondering whether the spread of computers (14) ... us as many problems as it (15) ... .

**Ex. 111. Complete the following conversation with verbs from the box. Use the Present Perfect Simple or Continuous. You will need to use some of the verbs more than once. Read the whole conversation before you start.**

be, come, do, drive, find, have , look, manage.

Mrs. Carr is interviewing Jane for a job working with children.

M.C.: Come on, Jane, do take a seat. Would you like a coffee?

J: Thank you, actually I (1) ... (*just*) one.

M.C.: Oh, good. Now, do you know this area at all?

J: Quite well. My grandparents live just on the outskirts of the town so I (2) ... here for holidays since I was little. I was staying with them at the moment, actually.

M.C.: Oh, that's nice. And do you have a driving license?

J: Yes. I (3) ... for four years now.

M.C.: And would you say you're a careful driver?

J: Yes, I think so. At least I (4) ... (*never*) an accident.

M.C.: Good. Now, could you tell me why you think you would be right for this job?

J: Well, I (5) ... (*always*) interested in working with small children. And I (6) ... to get quite a bit of practical experience by taking holiday jobs and so on.

M.C.: How do you think you would cope in an emergency?

J: I'm quite a calm person, I think. I (7) ... a first aid course, too. I got this badge.

M.C.: Oh, yes. That's good. Now, this job isn't permanent, as you know. We need someone for about a year. How would that fit with your long-term plans?

J: I'd like to work abroad eventually. But I want some full-time experience first. I (8) ... a Nursery Teacher's course this year. We finish next week, in fact, and I've already got a Child Care certificate.

M.C.: Well, I can't any promises, but you do sound just the sort of a person we're looking for. When would you be able to start?

J: As soon as I finish my Nursery Teacher's course.

M.C.: Excellent. And would you live with your parents?

J: Well, they live a bit far away. I'd probably try to get a small flat. I (9) ... in the paper every day, but I (10) ... (*not*) anything yet.

M.C.: Well if you get the job, we'll try to help you. Now, would you like to come and meet some of the children?

J: Oh, yes.

**Ex. 112. Complete the sentences with one of the verbs in the box in a suitable form. Be careful — some of them are negative. Use Present Perfect and Present.**

a) be b) deal c) finish d) know e) have f) make g) see h) speak  
i) stare j) suffer k) suit l) want m) seem

1. I'm afraid I ... typing those letters. I ... with customers all morning. 2. That jacket really ... you. How long ... you ... your own clothes? 3. Thank you, but I really ... any more juice. I ... two large glasses already. 4. I can't find my watch. ... you ... it recently? 5. Paul ... from earache since the weekend. He ... to the doctor twice, but it's still not better. 6. We ... why Pamela is upset, but she ... to us for ages. 7. Why ... you ... at me? I suppose you ... a woman on a motorbike before!

**Ex. 113. Use the Present Perfect with *since* or *for*.**

1. Tony (*to work*) ... for the power company 1995. 2. His brother (*to work*) ... for the power company ... three years. 3. I (*to know*) ... Roy Barrow ... February. 4. I (*to know*) ... her brother ... two years. 5. Anthony (*to walk*) ... with a limp ... many years. 6. He (*to have*) ... a bad leg ... he was in the war. 7. Magi (*not to be*) ... in class ... last Monday. 8. She (*not to be*) ... in class ... three days. 9. I (*to have*) ... a toothache ... yesterday morning. 10. I (*to have*) ... this toothache ... thirty six hours. 11. My vision (*to improve*) ... I got new reading glasses. 12. I (*to have*) ... a cold ... almost a week. 13. John (*not to work*) ... last summer when the factory closed down. 14. I (*to attend*) ... London Elementary School ... six years.

**Ex. 114. Complete the sentences with the words in brackets.**

1. I (*to know*) ... Larry since we (*to be*) ... in college. 2. Jack (*to change*) ... his major three times since he (*to start*) ... school. 3. Ever since I (*to be*) ... a child, I (*to be*) ... afraid of snakes. 4. I can't wait to get home to my own bed. I (*to sleep, not*) ... well since I (*to leave*) ... home two days ago. 5. Ever since Roy (*to meet*) ... Kelly, he (*not to be*) ... able to think about anything else or anyone else. He's in love. 6. Oscar (*to have*) ... a lot of problems with his car ever since he (*buy*) ... it. 7. A: What (*you, to eat*) ... since you (*to get*) ... up this morning? B: I (*to eat*) ... a banana and some yogurt. That's all. 8. I'm eighteen. I have a job and I am at school. My life is going okay now, but I (*to have*) ... a miserable life when I (*to be*) ... a young

child. Ever since I (*to leave*) ... home at the age of fifteen, I (*to take*) ... care of myself. I (*to have*) ... some hard times, but I (*to learn*) ... how to stand on my own feet.

**Ex. 115. Use one of the following tenses: Present Perfect, Present Simple, Present Continuous or Past Simple.**

1. Please give me a pencil, I (*to lose*) ... mine. 2. I (*not to meet*) ... Jan since Sunday. 3. Nora just (*to finish*) ... work. 4. — Where Sonia (*to be*) ... ? — She (*to go*) ... home. She (*to leave*) ... the room a minute ago. 5. What you (*to read*) ... now? — I (*to read*) ... “Jane Eyre” by Charlotte Bronte. 6. They (*to read*) ... “David Copperfield” by Charles Dickens a month ago. What about you? You (*to read*) ... “David Copperfield”? 7. My watch (*to stop*) ... . There (*to be*) ... something wrong with it. 8. You (*to see*) ... Joy today? — Yes, I (*to see*) ... him at the institute. 9. You (*to hear*) the new CD by Madonna? — Yes, I ... . — When you (*to hear*) ... it ? — I (*to hear*) ... it last Sunday. 10. You (*to change*) ... so much. Anything (*to happen*) ...? 11. What you (*to do*) ... here at such a late hour? You (*to write*) ... your composition? — No, I (*to write*) ... it already. I (*to work*) ... at my report. — And when you (*to write*) ... your composition? — I (*to finish*) ... it yesterday. 12. I say, Tom, let’s have dinner. — No, thank you , I already (*to have*) ... dinner. 13. What the weather (*to be*) ... like? It still (*to rain*) ... ? — No, it (*to stop*) ... raining.

**Ex. 116. Complete the sentences with the verbs in Present Simple, Present Perfect , Past Simple or Past Continious.**

1. They (*to go*) ... to the Tate Gallery last week. 2. They (*to be*) ... to the Tate Gallery twice this week. 3. After school yesterday he (*to come*) ... home, (*to have*) ... dinner, (*to read*) ... an article from the latest magazine and (*to begin*) ... doing his homework. 4. “When your friend (*to return*) ... from the south?” “He (*to return*) ... yesterday. — You (*to go*) ... to the station to meet him?” “No, I ... , I (*to be*) ... very busy.” 5. I (*to see*) ... this film this week. I like it very much. 6. When I (*to enter*) ... the kitchen, I (*to see*) ... that my mother (*to stand*) ... at the table and (*to cut*) ... some cabbage. She (*to cook*) ... dinner. 7. As soon as I (*to hear*) ... a cry, I (*to run*) ... out of the room and (*to see*) ... that a child (*to lie*) ... on the ground and (*to cry*) ... . “What (*to happen*) ...? Why you (*to cry*) ... ? You (*to*

*hurt* ) ... yourself?" I asked. 8. As soon as I ( *to see* ) ... him I ( *to understand* ) ... that he ( *to work* ) hard. He ( *to write* ) ... something and ( *not to notice* ) ... anything. 9. When I ( *to come* ) ... home yesterday, the children ( *to run* ) ... and ( *to sing* ) merrily. " We ( *to learn* ) ... a new song!" they cried. 10. When the young man ( *to enter* ) ... the room , she ( *to look* ) ... at him in surprise. " What you ( *to want* ) ... to tell me?" she ( *to say* ) ... . "Why you ( *to come* ) ...?" 11. It ( *to rain* ) ... hard when I ( *to leave* ) ... home yesterday, so I ( *to return* ) ... , ( *to put* ) ... on my raincoat and ( *to start* ) ... again. 12. "Your brother ( *to return* ) from America?" "Yes , he ( *to come* ) ... a few days ago." 13. "You ( *to be* ) ... to France? Where you ( *to be* ) ... there?" "I ( *to be* ) ... there in 1997." 14. "Where ( *to be* ) ... your brother?" "He just ( *to come* ) ... home. He ( *to take* ) ... a shower in the bathroom now."

**Ex. 117. Use the Present Perfect Continuous in the following sentences.**

**Model:** Nick is studying. He started *to study* at seven o'clock. It is now nine o'clock.

**A:** How long *has Nick been studying*? **B:** *He's been studying for two hours / since seven o'clock.*

1. Kate is working at the computer. She began to work at the computer at two o'clock. It is now three o'clock. **A:** How long ... ? **B:** She's ... *since* ... . 2. It began to rain two days ago. It is still raining. **A:** How long ... ? **B:** It ... *for* ... . 3. Liz is reading. She began to read at ten o'clock. It is now 10:30. **A:** How long ... **B:** It ... *for* ... . 4. Ben began to study English in 1995. He is still studying English. **A:** How long ... ? **B:** He ... *for* ... . 5. Three months ago, Nora started to work at the Central Department Store. **A:** How long ... ? **B:** She ... *for* ... .

**Ex. 118. Choose the correct verb form.**

1. Where have you been? I ... for you for over an hour! (*am waiting, have been waiting*). 2. I'm exhausted! I ... for the last eight hours without a break (*am working, have been working*). 3. Shhh! Karen ... . Let's not make any noise. We don't want to wake her up (*is sleeping, has been sleeping*). 4. Lora, go upstairs and wake your sister up. She ... for over ten hours. She has a lot of job to do (*is sleeping, has been sleeping*). 5. Ann has never gone camping. She ... in a tent (*has never slept, has never been sleeping*). 6. This is a

great shirt! I ... it at least ten times, and it still looks like new (**have washed, have been washing**). 7. Aren't you about finishing with the dishes? You ... dishes for thirty minutes or more. How long can it take to wash dishes? (**have washed, have been washing**). 8. We ... to the Beijing restaurant many times. The food is excellent (**have been, have been doing**).

**Ex. 119. Present Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous, Past Simple, Past Continuous.**

Underline the correct verb form A, B, C, or D to fill the spaces in the following sentences.

- About 200 people \_\_\_\_\_ outside the theatre for tickets when we got there.  
A. were queuing B. queued C. have queued D. queue
- This time last week I \_\_\_\_\_ to Berlin.  
A. have driven B. have drove C. was driving  
D. have been driving
- By the time the teacher arrived, the classroom was empty: the students \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. left B. had left C. were leaving D. have left
- The witness claimed he \_\_\_\_\_ the accused before.  
A. did not see B. hasn't seen C. wasn't seeing D. hadn't seen
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a shower when the telephone rang.  
A. had B. was having C. have had D. have
- She's changed a lot \_\_\_\_\_ she left school.  
A. for B. since C. during D. after
- I've been waiting in the rain \_\_\_\_\_ hours!  
A. during B. since C. for D. from
- \_\_\_\_\_ I was coming home I met my old English teacher.  
A. During B. While C. Before D. Since
- She was born twenty five years \_\_\_\_\_ in a small town in Scotland.  
A. before B. since C. over D. ago
- I've \_\_\_\_\_ seen the film and I don't want to see it again.  
A. yet B. still C. already D. before



**Ex. 120. Read this application letter. There are seven mistakes in it. Find and correct them. Use: Present Perfect, Present and Past.**

Dear Mr. Johnson,  
I would like to apply for the job of shop manager, which I see, advertised in the local newspaper.  
I am twenty years old. I was born in France but my family moved to England when I was twelve and I am living here ever since. I have several jobs in shops for three years and since then I am working in Halls department store.  
The manager has been saying that he is willing to give me a reference.  
I speak French and English fluently and I have learnt German since I left school, so I speak some German too.  
I hope you will consider my application.  
Yours sincerely,  
Angela Whither

**Ex. 121. Find mistakes in the use of the Present Perfect and the Simple Past and correct them.**

Dear Olga,  
Last month I have met the most wonderful guy. His name is Gary, and he is a student in our college. He lived here since 2001. Before that he lived in Liverpool too, so we have a lot in common. Gary has been married for five years but got divorced last September.  
Gary and I spent a lot of time together. Last week I saw him every night, and this week we've already got together three times after class. Monday night we have seen a great movie. Did you see "Mousetrap"? It's playing at all the theatres.  
We decided to take a trip back to Liverpool in the summer. Maybe we can get together? It would be great to see you again. Please let me know if you'll be there.

Love,  
Petra

**Ex. 122. Complete the story with the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous.**

In a short period, Anita Roddick (*become*) ... one of the most successful businesswomen in the world. She is the owner of an international chain of stores that sells soaps, body lotions, and creams. For almost twenty years, The Body Shop (*sell*) ... products that are “environmentally friendly.” They are made mostly of natural products from renewable sources, and come in biodegradable, recyclable containers. In addition, Roddick, who (*fight*) ... for years against the practice of animal testing of cosmetics, refuses to use any animals in the testing of the products.

The first Body Shop opened in Brighton, England, in 1976. Since then, more than 700 stores in more than forty different countries around the world (*open*) ... . Roddick relies on the reputation of her products and stores to attract customers. She never (*do*) ... any advertisements or commercials for her stores. Lately, however, you will see Roddick’s face if you turn on your TV. She (*appear*) on commercials for the American Express charge card.

Roddick spends almost half of her life travelling. Right now she is “on the road.” For the past several months, she (*travel*) ... around the world in search of new ideas for her body-care products. Roddick is more than a businesswoman. She (*receive*) ... several awards, including the United Nations Global 500 environmental award. She is also concerned with human rights, and she (*start*) ... a London newspaper that is sold by homeless people. Roddick (*write*) ... an autobiography, called *Body and Soul: Profits with Principles*. Published in 1991, the book shows how Roddick ... successfully (*combine*) ... business with social responsibility.

**Ex. 123. Use Present Simple, Present Continuous, Present Perfect, Past Simple, Past Continuous or Future Tense of the verbs in brackets.**

Dear Peter,

Hi! How are you? Remember me? Just a joke! I (*write, not*) ... to you for at least six months, but that’s not long enough for you to forget me! I think about writing to you often, but I (*be, not*) ... a good correspondent for the last few months. You (*hear, not*) ... from me for such a long time because I (*be*) ... really busy. For the last few months, I (*work*) ... full-time at a shoe store and (*go*) ... to school at the local community college to study business and computers.

When I (*write*) ... to you six months ago – last April, I think — I (*go*) ... to the university full-time and (*study*) ... anthropology. A lot of things (*happen*) ... since then.

At the end of the spring semester last June, my grades (*be*) ... terrible. As a result, I (*lose*) ... my scholarship and my parents' support. I really (*mess*) ... up when I (*get*) ... those bad grades. When I (*show*) ... my grade report to my parents, they (*refuse*) ... to help me with my living expenses at school anymore. They (*feel*) ... that I was wasting my time and their money, so they (*tell*) ... me to get a job. So last June, I (*start*) ... working at a shoe store. It (*not, be*) ... a bad job, but it (*be, not*) ... wonderful either. Every day, I (*fetch*) ... shoes from the black room for people to try on, boxes and boxes of shoes, all day long.

I (*meet*) ... some pretty weird people since I (*start*) ... this job. A couple of weeks ago, a middle-aged man (*come*) ... into the store. He (*want*) ... to try on some black leather loafers. I (*bring*) the loafers, and he (*put*) ... them on. While he (*walk*) ... around to see if they fit okay, he (*pull*) ... from his pocket a little white mouse with pink eyes and (*start*) ... talking to it. He (*look*) right at the mouse and (*say*) ... , “George, (*you, like*) ... this pair of shoes?” When the mouse (*twitch*) ... its nose, the man (*say*) ... , “ Yes, so do I.” Then he (*turn*) ... to me and (*say*), ... “ We’ll take them.” Can you believe that!?

Most of the people I meet are nice – and normal. My favorite customers (*be*) ... people who (*know*) ... what they want when they (*enter*) ... the store. They (*come*) ... in, (*point*) ... at one pair of shoes, politely (*tell*) ... me their size, (*try*) ... the shoes on, and then (*buy*) ... them, just like that. They (*think, not*) ... for a long time over which pair to buy.

I (*learn*) ... one important thing from working at the shoe store: I (*want, not*) ... to sell shoes as a career. I (*need*) ... a good education that (*prepare*) ... me for a job that I can enjoy for the rest of my life. And even though I love studying anthropology, I (*decide*) ... that a degree in business and computers will provide the best career opportunities.

I (*want, always*) ... to be independent, and now I (*be*) ... . I (*have*) ... to pay every penny of my tuition and living expenses now. Ever since I (*lose*) ... my scholarship and (*make*) ... my parents mad, I (*be*) ... completely on my own. I’m glad to report that my grades at present (*be*) ... excellent, and right now I (*enjoy, really*) ... my work with computers. In the future, I (*continue*) ... to take courses in anthropology whenever I can fit them into my schedule, and (*study*) ...

anthropology on my own for the rest of my life, but I (*pursue*) ... a career in business. Maybe there is some way I can combine anthropology, business, and computers. Who knows?

There, I (*tell*) ... you everything I can think of that is at all important in my life at the moment. I think I (*grow*) ... up a lot during the last six months. I (*understand*) ... that my education is important. Losing my scholarship (*make*) ... my life more difficult, but I (*feel*) ... that I (*take, finally*) ... charge of my life. It's a good feeling.

Please write. I'd love to hear from you.

Maria

**Ex. 124. Match the two halves of the sentences.**

1	My little brother started school	a	all day
2	The Prime Minister hasn't been abroad	b	when he was six
3	I caught a cold	c	in the 19 <sup>th</sup> century
4	My father has been asleep in bed	d	since January
5.	The Red Cross started	e	several minutes ago
6.	The dentist has asked us to wait	f	when we went out in the train
7.	The last bus left	g	for a few minutes

**Ex. 125. Choose the correct form of the verbs. (Past Simple, Past Perfect).**

Conference report

Parkhouse Hotel 5<sup>th</sup> September

The conference was very successful. The seminars and talks (1) *were* / *had been* extremely interesting and it was obvious that all speakers (2) *had prepared* / *prepared* their material very thoroughly. Everyone agreed that this should become an annual event.

There were however a number of administrative problems. When we (3) *arrived* / *had arrived*, we (4) *discovered* / *had discovered*, that the hotel manager (5) *reserved* / *had reserved* the wrong room for us and therefore we (6) *did not have* / *had not had* enough space. Unfortunately, he could not let us have the larger room because (7) *he gave* / *had given* it to another group, even bigger than ours.

He (8) *also misunderstood* / *had misunderstood* the letter explaining what food we (9) *required* / *had required*. In fact, we (10) *suspected* / *had suspected* that he (11) *lost* / *had lost* the letter. We do not recommend using this hotel again.

**Ex. 126. Use the Present Perfect or Past Perfect.**

1. A: Oh, no! We're too late. The train (*leave, already*) ... .  
B: That's okay. We'll catch the next train to London. 2. Last Thursday, we went to the station to catch a train to Bristol, but we were too late. The train (*leave, already*) ... . 3. A: Go back to sleep. It's only five o'clock in the morning. B: I am not sleepy. I (*sleep, already*) ... for three hours. I'm going to get up. 4. I woke up at five, but I couldn't get back to sleep. I wasn't sleepy. I (*sleep, already*) ... for three hours. 5. A: I'll introduce you to Mr. Brown at the meeting tonight. B: You don't need to. I (*already, meet*) ... him. 6. Alex offered to introduce me to Mr. Brown, but it wasn't necessary. I (*meet, already*) ... him. 7. A: Do you want to go to the movie tonight? B: What are you going to see? A: The Silence of the Lambs. B: I (*see, already*) ... it. Thanks anyway. 8. I didn't go to the movie with Eva last Saturday night. I (*see, already*) ... . 9. A: Amanda? Amanda! Is that you? How are you? I haven't seen you for ages! B: Excuse me? Are you talking to me? A: Oh. You're not Amanda? I'm sorry. It is clear that I (*make*) ... a mistake. Please excuse me. 10. Yesterday I approached a stranger who looked like Amanda and started talking to her. But she wasn't Amanda. It was clear that I (*make*) ... a mistake. I was really embarrassed.

**Ex. 127. Use Past Continuous or Past Perfect.**

1. Adel didn't need to study the multiplication tables in the seventh grade. She (*to learn*) ... them. 2. I enjoyed visiting Adel's class. It was an arithmetic class. The students (*to do*) ... their multiplication tables. 3. While I (*to walk*) ... up the mountains, I got tired. But I didn't stop until I reached the top. 4. I was very tired when I got to the top of the mountain. I (*to walk*) ... a long distance. 5. I knocked. No one answered. I turned the handle and pulled sharply the door, but it didn't open. Someone (*to lock*) ... it. 6. "Where were you when the earthquake occurred?" "In my office. I (*to talk*) ... to my assistant. We were working on the report." 7. "Roy's house was destroyed in the earthquake." "I know! It's lucky that he and his family (*to leave*) ... for his parents' home before the earthquake struck." 8. We drove three hundred miles to see the circus in Atlanta. When we got there, we couldn't find the circus. It had left city. We (*to drive*) ... all the way to Atlanta for nothing.

**Ex. 128. Use Present Perfect, Past Continuous or Past Perfect.**

1. When I went to bed, I turned on the radio. While I (*sleep*) ... somebody turned it off. 2. You're from Italy? I (*never, to be*) ... there. I'd like to go there someday. 3. I started to tell Dad the news, but he stopped me. He (*already, to hear*) ... it. 4. When Karen went to bed, it was snowing. It (*snow, still*) ... when she woke up in the morning. 5. Rita called me on the phone to tell me the good news. She (*to pass*) ... her final exam in English. 6. I couldn't think. The people around me (*make*) ... too much noise. Finally, I gave up and left to try to find a quiet place to work. 7. Are you still waiting for Peter? (*he, come, not*) ... yet? He's really late, isn't he? 8. Otto (*to be, never*) ... in the hospital before. It was a new experience for him. 9. A couple of weeks ago Mr. Brown, our office manager, surprised all of us. When he walked into the office, he (*to wear*) ... a bright red jacket. Everyone stopped and stared. Mr. Brown is a conservative dresser. Before that time, he (*to wear, never*) ... anything but a blue or gray suit. And he (*wear, not*) ... that jacket again since that time. He wore it only once.

**Ex. 129. Complete the following conversations by putting the verbs in the right tense.**

A: John is watching television when his sister Paola comes into the room.

*John:* What are you doing in your dressing gown? It's only eight o'clock.

*Paola:* I don't feel very well. (1) ... (*I / have*) an early night.

*John:* Oh, dear. I hope (2) ... (*you / feel*) better in the morning.

*Paola:* So do I. (3) ... (*I / meet*) my new boss at ten o'clock.

*John:* I think (4) ... (*I / make*) some tea when the news (5) ... (*finish*). (6) ... (*I / bring*) you a cup?

*Paola:* No, don't bother. (7) ... (*I / try*) and go straight to sleep. Thanks anyway.

*John:* OK. Sleep well.

B: Sandy and Alison are students who have been sharing a flat. Sandy is leaving to do a course abroad.

*Sandy:* It's saying goodbye after so long.

*Alison:* We must keep in touch. (8) ... (*you / remember*) to send me your address when you (9) ... (*you / get*) to the States?

*Sandy:* Of course. (10) ... (**I / probably / not / have**) time next week, because (11) ... (**my course / start**) the day after (12) ... (**I / arrive**), and I (13) ... (**I / spend**) the weekend with some old friends of my father's.

*Alison:* Well, you can phone.

*Sandy:* Yes, I guess so. Do you know what (14) ... (**you / do**) this time next Sunday?

*Alison:* (15) ... (**I / get**) ready to go to London.

*Sandy:* OK. So, (16) ... (**I / phone**) about three o'clock next Sunday.

*Alison:* Great. (17) ... (**I / wait**) for your call.

**Ex. 130. Fill in the sentences with one of the verb forms given after each sentence.**

1. My mother began to drive cars when she was fifteen. Now she is eighty, and she still drives. She ... cars for sixty years.  
*A: has been driving    B: drives    C: drove    D: was driving*
2. In every culture, people ... jewelry since prehistoric times.  
*A: wear    B: wore    C: have worn    D: had worn*
3. It's hard for many young people to find jobs today. As a result, many young adults in their twenties and even early thirties ... with their parents.  
*A: have still lived    B: are still living  
C: still lived    D: were still living*
4. Australian koala bears are interesting animals. They ... practically their entire lives in trees without even coming down to the ground.  
*A: are spending    B: have been spending  
C: spent    D: spend*
5. If you continue to work hard and try your best, I ... you. But if you stop working, I'm through.  
*A: will help    B: am helping  
C: help    D: have helped*
6. It's raining hard. It ... an hour ago and ... yet.  
*A: starts ... doesn't stop    B: started ... hasn't stopped  
C: has started ... didn't stop    D: was starting ... isn't stopping*
7. Nigel's bags are almost ready for the trip. He ... for Syria later this afternoon.  
*A: leave    B: left    C: has left    D: is leaving*

8. I heard a slight noise, so I walked to the front door to investigate. I looked down at the floor and saw a piece of paper. Someone ... a note under the door to my apartment.

*A: has pushed B: is pushing C: had pushed D: pushed*

9. I walked slowly through the market. People ... all kinds of fruits and vegetables. I studied the prices carefully before I decided what to buy.

*A: have sold B: sell C: had sold D: were selling*

10. The first advertisement on radio was broadcast in 1922. Since that time, companies ... tens of billions of dollars to advertise their products on radio and television.

*A: are spending B: have spent C: spent D: spend*

**Ex. 131. Test yourself. Choose the correct verb form.**

1. Were you at the race yesterday? I ... you there.

*A: haven't seen B: didn't see C: wasn't seeing D: don't see*

2. Patty, please don't interrupt me. I ... to Mom on the phone. Go play with your dolls.

*A: talk B: have talked C: am talking D: have been talking*

3. Now listen carefully. When Aunt Betty ... tomorrow, give her a big hug.

*A: arrives B: will arrive C: arrived D: is going to arrive*

4. I ... my glasses three times so far this year. One time I dropped them on the cement floor. Another time I sat on them. And this time I stepped on them.

*A: broke B: was breaking C: have broken D: have been breaking*

5. Angela reached to the floor and picked up her glasses. They were broken. She ... on them.

*A: stepped B: had stepped C: was stepping D: has stepped*

6. Dorothy gets angry easily. She ... a bad temper ever since she was a child.

*A: has B: will have C: had D: has had*

7. Now, whenever Dorothy starts to lose her temper, she ... a deep breath and ... to ten.

*A: takes ... counts B: has taken ... counted  
C: took ... counted D: is taking ... counting*

8. I unlocked my door and walked into my flat. I was surprised to see my cousin there. He ... in the middle of the of the big



room. He ... in through the open window in the kitchen. I demanded to know why he was in my flat.

*A: stood ... was coming    B: stood ... came*

*C: was standing ... came    D: was standing ... had come*

9. Ever since I told Tom about my illness, he ... me. Why are people like that?

*A: is avoiding*

*B: avoided*

*C: avoids*

*D: has been avoiding*

10. The phone rang, so I ... it up and ... hello.

*A: picked ... had said*

*B: picked ... said*

*C: was picking ... said*

*D: was picking ... had said*

**Ex. 132. Make the necessary changes in order for the sentences to be grammatically correct.**

The native people of Northern Canada and Alaska have participated in dog sled races since more than 500 years.

The Inuit people has used dog sleds as their main source of transportation since settling in the northern parts of North America.

The sled dogs have working as faithful beasts of burden, carrying people and equipment from place to place.

In the past, every Inuit family wants a dog sled team because this was the only source of transportation over the frozen land.

The use of sled dogs as the primary means of transportation have declined since the invention of the snowmobile.

One of the most famous sled dog races, the Iditarod Trail, covers more than 1,000 miles of Alaskan wilderness; it have challenged competitors and their dogs for many years.

I have wanted seeing this race for a long time, but I never had the opportunity.

Last year, I have seen this great race for the first time. I was there at the finish line in Nome, Alaska.

Have you never eaten Indian food? No, I haven't.

I have had Indian food several times, but I didn't have it in a long time. I think you would like it.

Yes, I think I would. I've always wanted to try Indian food, but not ever had the chance.

Indian food is famous for its curried vegetables. I have ate curried eggplant and curried beans.

That sounds great. Let's go and eat now. I need some lunch; I haven't have anything to eat all day.

I need to look up the address of the Indian restaurant. I haven't being there in a while.

I think I'll enjoy this. I haven't eaten out since a while and I want a new taste experience.

## Check yourself

**Ex. 133. TEST 1. Choose the correct answer.**

1. "Have you ever been to France?" "Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ there last August."  
*a) had been    b) went    c) have been    d) were*
2. It's a small town in the south \_\_\_\_\_ England.  
*a) -    b) from    c) to    d) of*
3. Couldn't you go a little faster? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a hurry.  
*a) on    b) in    c) at    d) of*
4. I usually wear skirts, but today I \_\_\_\_\_ trousers.  
*a) wears    b) wear    c) wearing    d) am wearing*
5. It's Mr. Smith, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*a) isn't it    b) isn't he    c) is it    d) is not it*
6. One of my neighbours has \_\_\_\_\_ me to tea.  
*a) invited    b) pleased    c) suggested    d) welcomed*
7. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ in the news.  
*a) exciting    b) interesting    c) interested    d) interest*
8. Can we \_\_\_\_\_ at your house and go to the party together?  
*a) come    b) see    c) find    d) meet*
9. How can I \_\_\_\_\_ to the post-office?  
*a) reach    b) get    c) find    d) arrive*
10. "Must I take my umbrella?" "No, you \_\_\_\_\_. It's not going to rain."  
*a) mustn't    b) needn't    c) have to    d) don't*
11. I think John \_\_\_\_\_ translate this document.  
*a) have to    b) will have    c) has    d) will have to*
12. I was a bit worried because I thought I might \_\_\_\_\_ my train.  
*a) be late    b) not reach    c) lose    d) miss*
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast when the phone rang.  
*a) had    b) have    c) am having    d) was having*

14. This car is more \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.  
*a) fast      b) faster      c) modern d) fastest*
15. She hasn't written to me \_\_\_\_\_ we met last time.  
*a) since      b) ago      c) for      d) before*
16. This question is \_\_\_\_\_ difficult for me.  
*a) too      b) to      c) enough d) such*
17. This record-shop \_\_\_\_\_ be a book-shop a few years ago.  
*a) use      b) used to      c) used      d) had*
18. She doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ television.  
*a) looking      b) watch      c) watching      d) see*
19. He arrived \_\_\_\_\_ you were asleep.  
*a) during      b) for      c) while      d) until*
20. Mr. Smith woke up in the middle of the night. He could hear \_\_\_\_\_ in his garden.  
*a) anybody      b) everywhere      c) someone      d) anything*

**Ex. 134. TEST 2. Choose the correct answer.**

1. This dinner looks \_\_\_\_\_ to me.  
*a) well      b) badly      c) good      d) nicely*
2. If he \_\_\_\_\_ worked harder, he would have passed the exams.  
*a) had      b) would have      c) would      d) had have*
3. I couldn't come to the party because I \_\_\_\_\_ go to work.  
*a) had      b) had to      c) have      d) have got*
4. He doesn't speak languages very \_\_\_\_\_.  
*a) best      b) good      c) better      d) well*
5. "Harry is on the phone." "Who \_\_\_\_\_ to?"  
*a) does he talk      b) is he talk      c) is he talking      d) he talks*
6. Which country \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
*a) Tom is coming      b) does Tom come      c) comes Tom      d) is coming Tom*
7. "Excuse me." " \_\_\_\_\_ "  
*a) Please.      b) No, I'm not.      c) Yes?      d) Yes, I am.*
8. " \_\_\_\_\_ I put it in a bag?" "Yes, please."  
*a) Will      b) Do      c) Shall      d) Would*
9. "What is he doing?" " \_\_\_\_\_ ."  
*a) He's an economist      b) He's having lunch      c) He's doing i      d) He has lunch*
10. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ the window, please?  
*a) to open      b) open      c) opening      d) I open*

11. "Would you like a coke?" " \_\_\_\_\_ ."  
 a) *Yes, I'd like* b) *Yes, I like* c) *Yes, I do* d) *Yes, please*
12. We arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the airport in time.  
 a) *-* b) *at* c) *on* d) *in*
13. \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *I very like reading.* b) *I like very much reading.*  
 c) *I like reading very much.* d) *I like very reading.*
14. It rained all day yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 a) *it didn't* b) *no* c) *isn't it* d) *didn't it*
15. Father leaves \_\_\_\_\_ home at 7 o'clock so that he can be in his office at 8.  
 a) *for* b) *-* c) *from* d) *at*
16. I don't know where he is, he hasn't arrived \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *still* b) *already* c) *yet* d) *since*
17. This car is \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *mine* b) *my* c) *mine's* d) *her's*
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ you are wrong.  
 a) *know* b) *knows* c) *am knowing* d) *knowing*
19. My teacher lives \_\_\_\_\_ 45 Elm Street.  
 a) *under* b) *on* c) *in* d) *at*
20. "Did you enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ ?" "Yes, I did."  
 a) *yourselves* b) *myself* c) *you* d) *yourself*

**Ex. 135. TEST 3. Choose the correct answer.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ in our city are expensive.  
 a) *All restaurant* b) *The restaurants all*  
 c) *All the restaurants* d) *The all restaurants*
2. Their parents came \_\_\_\_\_ car yesterday.  
 a) *by* b) *in* c) *on* d) *with*
3. You are taller \_\_\_\_\_ Mary.  
 a) *then* b) *than* c) *-* d) *to*
4. Mr. Dupont is \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *the French* b) *a French* c) *French* d) *France*
5. If she \_\_\_\_\_ Peter, he'll stay.  
 a) *asked* b) *had asked* c) *has asked* d) *asks*
6. He can't go to see her tonight. He hasn't got \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
 a) *many* b) *a* c) *some* d) *much*
7. What \_\_\_\_\_ ? Is she a lawyer?  
 a) *does she* b) *she does* c) *does she do* d) *is she doing*

8. About half an hour \_\_\_\_\_ I saw Mr. Brown.  
*a) for                      b) since                      c) before                      d) ago*
9. As soon as I shut the front door I realised that I \_\_\_\_\_ my key in the house.  
*a) had left                      b) have left                      c) left                      d) was leaving*
10. He hasn't got \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) a lot of luggages                      b) many luggages*  
*c) much luggage                      d) a great number of luggage*
11. Your car is smarter \_\_\_\_\_ mine.  
*a) then                      b) as                      c) than                      d) that*
12. He watched TV \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) today morning                      b) today in the morning*  
*c) this morning                      d) morning*
13. Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ hungry.  
*a) is                      b) isn't                      c) aren't                      d) are*
14. What can you see \_\_\_\_\_ the photo?  
*a) in                      b) on                      c) at                      d) on to*
15. Please \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) put off your coat                      b) take on your coat*  
*c) put your coat on                      d) take up your coat*
16. They came \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) early in the morning                      b) in early the morning*  
*c) early the morning                      d) in the morning early*
17. Why aren't you looking \_\_\_\_\_ your notebook?  
*a) to                      b) –                      c) at                      d) on*
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ the car now.  
*a) am not hearing                      b) can't hearing*  
*c) am not hear                      d) can't hear*
19. \_\_\_\_\_ radio is on the table?  
*a) Who's                      b) Whoes                      c) Whose                      d) Whos'*
20. Please answer \_\_\_\_\_ questions.  
*a) their                      b) them                      c) to their                      d) to them*

**Ex. 136. TEST 4. Choose the correct answer.**

1. " \_\_\_\_\_ ?" "She is tall and clever."  
*a) How is she like                      b) What is she like*  
*c) What is she                      d) Who is she*
2. Liz read the story, \_\_\_\_\_ she?  
*a) didn't                      b) doesn't                      c) don't                      d) isn't*

3. Henry arrived \_\_\_\_\_ station at 9.  
 a) to                      b) at the                      c) to the                      d) on the
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.  
 a) was waiting for                      b) were waiting for  
 c) was waiting                      d) were waiting
5. They won't do that, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a) won't they                      b) did they                      c) will they                      d) will they not
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
 a) Is a fridge in the kitchen?  
 b) Are there a fridge in the kitchen?  
 c) Is some fridge in the kitchen?  
 d) Is there a fridge in the kitchen?
7. He isn't in London now because he \_\_\_\_\_ to the Continent.  
 a) has been                      b) was going                      c) will going                      d) has gone
8. I can only see \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) a few bottle                      b) a little bottles  
 c) a few bottles                      d) many bottles
9. How \_\_\_\_\_ of matches have we got?  
 a) much boxes                      b) many box                      c) much box                      d) many boxes
10. "\_\_\_\_\_ I open the window?" "Yes, please."  
 a) Will                      b) Must to                      c) Shall                      d) Would
11. They \_\_\_\_\_ once a week.  
 a) was buying                      b) bought  
 c) went shopping                      d) went to shops
12. He came \_\_\_\_\_ train.  
 a) with                      b) with a                      c) by                      d) by a
13. \_\_\_\_\_ to the station when I saw you this morning?  
 a) Have you gone                      b) Are you going  
 c) Were you going                      d) Have you been going
14. He went to school \_\_\_\_\_ five.  
 a) at age of                      b) at the age of                      c) by age of                      d) at the age
15. "What do you do?" "\_\_\_\_\_."  
 a) I'm a typist                      b) I'm typing a letter  
 c) I typing letters                      d) I'm type letter
16. When did you \_\_\_\_\_ that photo?  
 a) make                      b) made                      c) do                      d) take
17. When the telephone rang she \_\_\_\_\_ a letter.  
 a) writes                      b) will write                      c) has written                      d) was writing

18. If it \_\_\_\_\_ nice tomorrow, we'll go to the zoo.  
 a) is                      b) will                      c) will be                      d) would be
19. We \_\_\_\_\_ the sights of the city.  
 a) will shown                      b) have showing  
 c) were shown                      d) were showed
20. I \_\_\_\_\_ English since I was at school.  
 a) didn't speak    b) don't speak    c) haven't spoken    d) speaking

**Ex. 137. TEST 5. Choose the correct answer.**

1. "What is their new house like?" "It \_\_\_\_\_."  
 a) looks like an office block                      b) likes yours  
 c) seems like very comfortable                      d) looks very well
2. Tell me more about your work, I'm very \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) interesting                      b) interested for it  
 c) interesting in it                      d) interested in it
3. "\_\_\_\_\_?" "I have a bad headache."  
 a) What does it matter                      b) What matters  
 c) What is matter with you                      d) What's the matter with you
4. I'm sorry but you \_\_\_\_\_ several mistakes.  
 a) wrote                      b) told                      c) did                      d) made
5. "Have you ever met Tom?" "Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_ at the concert."  
 a) met                      b) have met                      c) were meeting                      d) had meet
6. When he came two minutes ago everybody else \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) had already arrived                      b) has already arrived  
 c) have already been there                      d) were there
7. Their flat is very modern, but they have some antique \_\_\_\_\_ in it.  
 a) furnitures                      b) pieces of furnitures  
 c) piece of furnitures                      d) pieces of furniture
8. I don't see why I \_\_\_\_\_ help you.  
 a) would                      b) should                      c) am going to                      d) will
9. This film was \_\_\_\_\_ interesting than last week's.  
 a) not so                      b) much                      c) rather                      d) more
10. He had an accident and \_\_\_\_\_ to hospital.  
 a) was brought                      b) was taken  
 c) had been taken                      d) had to take
11. If we keep on at this speed, we'll reach the top \_\_\_\_\_ an hour.  
 a) after                      b) in                      c) -                      d) less than

12. "I'm sorry I can't do the shopping today." "OK, \_\_\_\_\_ it then."  
 a) *I'm going to do*                      b) *I'll do*  
 c) *I'm doing*                              d) *I do*
13. They got some valuable \_\_\_\_\_ from the night watchman.  
 a) *informations*                          b) *piece of information*  
 c) *information*                          d) *pieces of informations*
14. I was \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *yesterday at home all day*      b) *yesterday all day at home*  
 c) *at home all day yesterday*      d) *all day at home yesterday*
15. "Have you been to Osaka?" " \_\_\_\_\_ ."  
 a) *Until now not*                      b) *Already not*  
 c) *Still not*                                d) *Not yet*
16. Janet and I live quite near \_\_\_\_\_ each other.  
 a) *from*                      b) *–*                      c) *at*                      d) *as*
17. I'm no good \_\_\_\_\_ mathematics.  
 a) *by*                      b) *for*                      c) *on*                      d) *at*
18. She was ill, so she had to go \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
 a) *to*                      b) *at*                      c) *for*                      d) *–*
19. It is the most beautiful building \_\_\_\_\_ the world.  
 a) *in*                      b) *of*                      c) *from*                      d) *on*
20. John is a good worker: he works very \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *hardly*                      b) *hard*                      c) *good*                      d) *many*

**Ex. 138. TEST 6. Choose the correct answer.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ cows are animals.  
 a) *Some*                      b) *The*                      c) *–*                      d) *A*
2. Can you play \_\_\_\_\_ piano?  
 a) *the*                      b) *on the*                      c) *a*                      d) *–*
3. \_\_\_\_\_ books on this shelf were written by Dickens.  
 a) *All*                      b) *All the*                      c) *Every*                      d) *The all*
4. She said she \_\_\_\_\_ for five hours.  
 a) *had been working*                      b) *has worked*  
 c) *worked*                      d) *has been working*
5. " \_\_\_\_\_ yet?" " Nearly."  
 a) *Are you finishing*                      b) *Have you finished*  
 c) *Do you finish*                      d) *Did you finish*
6. I don't speak Japanese, but Jenny \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *do*                      b) *speaks*                      c) *does*                      d) *is speaking it*



7. They \_\_\_\_\_ married in church last year.  
*a) are                      b) made                      c) got                      d) have*
8. They never do \_\_\_\_\_ homework.  
*a) there                      b) they're                      c) they                      d) their*
9. Janet is \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) an old friend of mine    b) an old my friend*  
*c) a my old friend                      d) an old friend of me*
10. He's \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent than his sister.  
*a) lesser                      b) much less                      c) much fewer                      d) not so*
11. My house is opposite \_\_\_\_\_ the park.  
*a) from                      b) of                      c) –                      d) to*
12. She loves \_\_\_\_\_ Hungarian music.  
*a) the                      b) –                      c) some of                      d) a*
13. She couldn't go to \_\_\_\_\_ prison to visit her husband.  
*a) –                      b) the                      c) a                      d) there*
14. As the sun \_\_\_\_\_ I decided to go out.  
*a) shines                      b) has shone                      c) shine                      d) was shining*
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ your uncle tomorrow, so I'll give him your note.  
*a) have seen                      b) shall have sheen*  
*c) am seeing                      d) going to see*
16. By the time the police arrived, the thieves \_\_\_\_\_ the stolen money.  
*a) hide                      b) had hidden*  
*c) are hiding                      d) will have hidden*
17. She walked \_\_\_\_\_ the road without looking.  
*a) by                      b) through                      c) across                      d) long*
18. We spent \_\_\_\_\_ day sunbathing.  
*a) the whole                      b) all the                      c) whole                      d) whole of the*
19. It's a long journey by train, it's much \_\_\_\_\_ by road.  
*a) quickly                      b) more quickly*  
*c) more quick                      d) quicker*
20. Hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
*a) come the post yet                      b) yet the post came*  
*c) the post yet come                      d) the post come yet*

**Ex. 139. TEST 7. Choose the correct answer.**

1. I haven't seen Jenny \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) for a long time                      b) in the last time*  
*c) since long                      d) lastly*

2. If you hurry, you will be in Burton \_\_\_\_\_ midnight.  
a) *until*      b) *while*      c) *on*      d) *by*
3. Don't drink so much tea, it's bad \_\_\_\_\_ your stomach.  
a) *by*      b) *in*      c) *on*      d) *for*
4. It's nice to be \_\_\_\_\_ friends.  
a) *under*      b) *between*      c) *among*      d) *by*
5. She spends all her money \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.  
a) *for*      b) *on*      c) *in*      d) *to*
6. We went by car and the children went \_\_\_\_\_ foot.  
a) *on*      b) *by*      c) *to*      d) *with*
7. \_\_\_\_\_ study hard when you were at school?  
a) *Must you*      b) *Had you*  
c) *Did you have to*      d) *Were you*
8. Two gangsters entered \_\_\_\_\_ the bank.  
a) *-*      b) *in*      c) *on*      d) *to*
9. If you come, \_\_\_\_\_ a friend with you.  
a) *bring*      b) *take*      c) *fetch*      d) *lift*
10. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me five pounds?  
a) *lend*      b) *borrow*      c) *rent*      d) *do*
11. Please, drive \_\_\_\_\_, you're making me nervous.  
a) *slow*      b) *more slowly*      c) *more slow*      d) *slowlier*
12. Let's play cards \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
a) *since*      b) *after*      c) *on*      d) *for*
13. Mike is afraid \_\_\_\_\_ spiders.  
a) *about*      b) *from*      c) *for*      d) *of*
14. We met when we were \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *in holiday*      b) *during holiday*  
c) *on holiday*      d) *by holiday*
15. It looks \_\_\_\_\_ rain.  
a) *like*      b) *as*      c) *so*      d) *for*
16. Why \_\_\_\_\_ school yesterday?  
a) *hasn't she been at*      b) *she wasn't at*  
c) *isn't she gone to*      d) *wasn't she at*
17. \_\_\_\_\_ boots were where they left them.  
a) *The three players'*      b) *The three player's*  
c) *The three players*      d) *Three players' their*
18. This is \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant in Bangkok.  
a) *the worst*      b) *worst*      c) *the more worse*      d) *the worse*

19. He \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *will be here soon*      b) *will here be soon*  
c) *will be soon here*      d) *soon will be here*

20. I'll wait here \_\_\_\_\_ 8 o'clock.  
a) *since*      b) *by*      c) *for*      d) *until*

**Ex. 140. TEST 8. Choose the correct answer.**

1. Yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_ my son's trousers.  
a) *sew*      b) *sawe*      c) *sewed*      d) *sow*
2. My brother's son is my \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *cousin*      b) *uncle*      c) *nephew*      d) *son-in-law*
3. Smoking is a bad \_\_\_\_\_ of yours.  
a) *practice*      b) *custom*      c) *usage*      d) *habit*
4. He doesn't like company. He always works \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *lonely*      b) *solo*      c) *only*      d) *alone*
5. I've got a very good \_\_\_\_\_ with the BBC.  
a) *work*      b) *job*      c) *profession*      d) *occupation*
6. How long does the train \_\_\_\_\_ from London to Edinburgh take?  
a) *travel*      b) *voyage*      c) *journey*      d) *tour*
7. My uncle arrived while I \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
a) *would cook*      b) *cook*      c) *had cooked*      d) *was cooking*
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ to the theatre twice so far his month.  
a) *are going*      b) *are*      c) *were*      d) *have been*
9. When \_\_\_\_\_ Mr Jones?  
a) *have you met*      b) *you did meet*  
c) *you met*      d) *did you meet*
10. We have been waiting for you \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) *an hour*      b) *an hour ago*      c) *since an hour*      d) *for an hour*
11. Don't be late \_\_\_\_\_ your music lesson.  
a) *for*      b) *on*      c) *at*      d) *to*
12. I can't wait. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a hurry.  
a) *with*      b) *in*      c) *for*      d) *on*
13. He won't be late, \_\_\_\_\_ he?  
a) *isn't*      b) *don't*      c) *will*      d) *won't*
14. How long does it \_\_\_\_\_ to get to London?  
a) *want*      b) *need*      c) *take*      d) *make*
15. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to town tomorrow, will you do some shopping for me?  
a) *went*      b) *will be going*      c) *go*      d) *will go*

16. "It's a pity you haven't seen that play." "But I have, I \_\_\_\_\_ it last week."  
*a) have seen    b) had seen    c) saw    d) was seen*
17. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ I met last Saturday?  
*a) with whom    b) who    c) that whom    d) -*
18. He would be very happy if you \_\_\_\_\_ what he asked.  
*a) do    b) did    c) will do    d) have done*
19. The whole thing is much simpler \_\_\_\_\_ you think.  
*a) -    b) then    c) than    d) as what*
20. I feel \_\_\_\_\_ after all this typing.  
*a) terribly tired    b) myself terribly tired*  
*c) terribly bad    d) myself terribly bad*

**Ex. 141. TEST 9. Choose the correct answer.**

1. I asked him what \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) did he read    b) was he reading*  
*c) he was reading    d) he is reading*
2. If you \_\_\_\_\_ me the book, I'll read it.  
*a) lend    b) will lend    c) lent    d) would lend*
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the news bad?  
*a) Is    b) Are    c) Were    d) Are there*
4. We have to read a book \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) every three weeks    b) week ago*  
*c) every three week    d) at next week*
5. The guide \_\_\_\_\_ some interesting things.  
*a) talked    b) said    c) spoke    d) told*
6. If you \_\_\_\_\_ such a long time to get dressed, we'd have been there by now.  
*a) hadn't taken    b) wouldn't have taken*  
*c) weren't taking    d) wouldn't take*
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ for this office since I arrived.  
*a) have been looking    b) look*  
*c) am looking    d) was looking*
8. He had done that before, \_\_\_\_\_ he?  
*a) wouldn't    b) didn't    c) hadn't    d) done had*
9. To travel from England to Scotland you \_\_\_\_\_ a passport.  
*a) mustn't have    b) haven't got*  
*c) don't need    d) needn't*

10. \_\_\_\_\_ are famous for their cheese and butter.  
*a) The Dutch people      b) The Dutches*  
*c) The Dutch                d) Dutches*
11. He came \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) home late last night    b) late home last night*  
*c) last night late home    d) last night home late*
12. She lived in Mallorca \_\_\_\_\_ two months.  
*a) during                    b) for                        c) while                    d) in*
13. Last year she married \_\_\_\_\_ a Russian dancer.  
*a) –                            b) with                      c) to                         d) on*
14. It was so late that I \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi.  
*a) have to                    b) was to                    c) must                     d) had to*
15. Do you think it \_\_\_\_\_ soon?  
*a) rains                        b) is going to rain*  
*c) is raining                    d) has rain*
16. I was \_\_\_\_\_ hungry that I ate six beefburgers.  
*a) as                            b) so much                    c) too                        d) so*
17. She got married \_\_\_\_\_ a rich businessman.  
*a) –                            b) with                      c) to                         d) for*
18. This lovely cake is full \_\_\_\_\_ nuts.  
*a) –                            b) of                         c) with                      d) from*
19. You've never had a girlfriend before, \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
*a) haven't                    b) have                      c) had                        d) hadn't*
20. I don't like tea: can I have \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
*a) something else            b) something other*  
*c) other thing                d) anything other*

**Ex. 142. TEST 10. Choose the correct answer.**

1. It was a long film: \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) it bored    b) I was bored    c) I was boring    d) it was bored*
2. Please speak a little more \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) slow                      b) slowly                    c) slower                    d) slowlier*
3. I decided to go \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) to a walk    b) for a walk    c) for a walking    d) walk*
4. Since 1964, there \_\_\_\_\_ no gas explosions here.  
*a) are                        b) have been    c) is                        d) were being*
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ dictionaries.  
*a) have no any                b) haven't some*  
*c) haven't any                d) have no some*

6. I \_\_\_\_\_ the table for supper.  
 a) *lied*                      b) *laid*                      c) *layd*                      d) *led*
7. I must go \_\_\_\_\_ before the shops are closed.  
 a) *shopping*                b) *to shopping*            c) *for shop*                d) *shop*
8. They were \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *learnt very hard*            b) *studying very hardly*  
 c) *learning hardly*            d) *studying very hard*
9. They told \_\_\_\_\_ what to do.  
 a) *him*                      b) *to him*                      c) *that he*                      d) *he*
10. When the doorbell \_\_\_\_\_ I was having a bath.  
 a) *rang*                      b) *rings*                      c) *rung*                      d) *ringed*
11. \_\_\_\_\_ to the next village?  
 a) *How far is it*                      b) *How long it is*  
 c) *How far is*                      d) *What far is it*
12. \_\_\_\_\_  
 a) *I already twice read have this book.*  
 b) *I have already read this book twice.*  
 c) *I have read already twice this book.*  
 d) *I twice have already read this book.*
13. He \_\_\_\_\_ in love with her over a year ago.  
 a) *fell*                      b) *has fallen*                      c) *falls*                      d) *felled*
14. If you can type \_\_\_\_\_ she can, you are very good.  
 a) *as quick as*                      b) *quicker then*  
 c) *as more quickly as*            d) *as quickly as*
15. Betty spoke to me \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *her name*                      b) *German*                      c) *the first*                      d) *at last*
16. When the man noticed me, he asked me \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) *some water*                      b) *my name*                      c) *a little food*                      d) *how am I*
17. "Who found that flower in the garden?" "I \_\_\_\_\_ ."  
 a) *did*                      b) *found*                      c) *did so*                      d) *did find*
18. \_\_\_\_\_ we buy a new car?  
 a) *Do you want that*                      b) *Shall*  
 c) *Would you like that*                      d) *Going to*
19. You \_\_\_\_\_ come tomorrow if you have something else to do.  
 a) *needn't to*                      b) *don't need*                      c) *mustn't*                      d) *needn't*
20. The plane arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the airport late on Monday.  
 a) *at*                      b) *in*                      c) *to*                      d) *for*

**Ex. 143. TEST 11. Choose the correct variant.**

1. “ \_\_\_\_\_ ? ” “ No, she’s on holiday. ”  
A. *Does Sue work*                      B. *Is working Sue*  
C. *Is Sue working*                      D. *Does work Sue*
2. “ Where \_\_\_\_\_ ? ” “ In a village near London. ”  
A. *lives your uncle*                      B. *does your uncle live*  
C. *your uncle lives*                      D. *does live your uncle*
3. I speak Italian but \_\_\_\_\_ French.  
A. *I speak not*                              B. *I’m not speaking*  
C. *I doesn’t speak*                      D. *I don’t speak*
4. “ Where’s Tom ? ” “ \_\_\_\_\_ a shower at the moment. ”  
A. *He’s having*                              B. *He have*  
C. *He has*                                      D. *He has had*
5. Why \_\_\_\_\_ angry with me yesterday ?  
A. *were you*                                      B. *was you*  
C. *you were*                                      D. *have you been*
6. My favourite film is **Poseidon**. \_\_\_\_\_ it four times.  
A. *I’m seeing*                                      B. *I see*  
C. *I saw*    D. *I’ve seen*
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ out last night. I was too tired.  
A. *don’t go*                                      B. *didn’t went*  
C. *didn’t go*                                      D. *haven’t gone*
8. Liz is from Edinburgh. She \_\_\_\_\_ there all her life.  
A. *is living*                                      B. *has lived*  
C. *lives*    D. *lived*
9. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ for me when I arrived.  
A. *waited*    B. *has waited*  
C. *was waiting*                                      D. *has been waiting*
10. “ How long \_\_\_\_\_ English ? ” “ Six months. ”  
A. *do you learn*                                      B. *are you learning*  
C. *you are learning*                                      D. *have you been learning*
11. Martin is English but he lives in France. He has been there  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. *for three years*                                      B. *since three years*  
C. *three years ago*                                      D. *during three years*
12. “ What time \_\_\_\_\_ ? ” “ About an hour ago. ”  
A. *has Ann phoned*                                      B. *Ann has phoned*  
C. *did Ann phone*                                      D. *is Ann phoning*

13. What \_\_\_\_\_ when you saw her?  
*A. did Sue wear      B. was Sue wearing*  
*C. has Sue worn      D. was wearing Sue*
14. "Can you drive?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_ a car but I want to learn."  
*A. I never drove      B. I'm never driving*  
*C. I've never driven      D. I was never driving*
15. I saw Lisa at the station when I was going to work this morning but she \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
*A. didn't see      B. don't see*  
*C. hasn't seen      D. didn't saw*

**Ex. 144. TEST 12. Choose the correct answer.**

1. When \_\_\_\_\_ give us your final decision?  
*a) are you      b) will you      c) going out to      d) you going to*
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
*a) I waited for at the airport long eight hours.*  
*b) I waited for at the airport eight long hours.*  
*c) At the airport for eight long hours I waited.*  
*d) I waited at the airport for eight long hours.*
3. It was past midnight, so there were \_\_\_\_\_ people in the street.  
*a) few      b) any      c) a few      d) less*
4. He took a shower and \_\_\_\_\_ went to bed.  
*a) after      b) then      c) than      d) thereby*
5. One of our lawyers \_\_\_\_\_ the case.  
*a) has studying      b) has been studying*  
*c) was studied      d) had studying*
6. It was Friday afternoon and the shops were full \_\_\_\_\_ customers.  
*a) of      b) in      c) by      d) with*
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is often made of wood.  
*a) Items of furniture      b) Furniture*  
*c) A piece of furnitures      d) Furnitures*
8. This young man can get along not only with girls, but also with \_\_\_\_\_ parents.  
*a) they're      b) their's      c) theirs      d) their*
9. The driver \_\_\_\_\_ to read a newspaper while he \_\_\_\_\_ for the lights to change.  
*a) had started — waited      b) has started — has been waiting*  
*c) was starting — has waited      d) started — was waiting*



10. \_\_\_\_\_ did you say \_\_\_\_\_ called?  
 a) *What – what were you*                      b) *How – you were*  
 c) *What – you were*                              d) *What – how were you*
11. She said she wouldn't refuse him if he \_\_\_\_\_ her out again.  
 a) *would ask*                                      b) *has asked*  
 c) *asked*    d) *would have asked*
12. Please ask \_\_\_\_\_ come and see me.  
 a) *to Bill to*                      b) *Bill to*                      c) *to Bill*                      d) *Bill*
13. Don't you remember that we \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema tonight?  
 a) *would go*                      b) *go*                              c) *are going*                      d) *will be gone*
14. Ask him how much \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) *did it cost*                      b) *cost it*                      c) *it cost*                      d) *it costed*
15. She always says that we \_\_\_\_\_ go and see her more often.  
 a) *should*                      b) *need*                      c) *would*                      d) *ought*
16. Living here at the top of the mountain must be very \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) *sole*                              b) *alone*                      c) *only*                      d) *lonely*
17. I \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden when I suddenly felt a pain.  
 a) *worked*                              b) *have worked*  
 c) *was working*                      d) *had been working*
18. The tailor made him a new \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) *clothes*                      b) *suit*                              c) *dress*                      d) *wear*
19. I'll have to buy \_\_\_\_\_ trousers.  
 a) *a*                                      b) *one*                              c) *a pair of*                      d) *a couple*
20. If you had left me a note, I \_\_\_\_\_ where you were.  
 a) *would have known*                      b) *had known*  
 c) *would be known*                      d) *had been known*

**Ex. 145. TEST 13. Choose the correct answer.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ this word in English?  
 a) *How do you call*                      b) *How do you say*  
 c) *What do you say*                      d) *How is called*
2. What \_\_\_\_\_ at the ABC cinema tonight?  
 a) *is played*                              b) *is on*  
 c) *is playing*                              d) *are they play*
3. Here are your shoes. I \_\_\_\_\_ them.  
 a) *have just cleaned*                      b) *have just been cleaned*  
 c) *did just clean*                              d) *just cleaned*



18. She'll tell us \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*a) 11 o'clock in this morning b) at 11 o'clock this morning*  
*c) on 11 o'clock this morning d) on this morning at 11 o'clock*
19. Is he married or \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
*a) alone b) lonely c) single d) free*
20. What are you going to do when you \_\_\_\_\_ school?  
*a) finished b) ended c) leave d) complete*

**Ex. 146. TEST 14. Choose the correct answer.**

1. I'm very tired — I \_\_\_\_\_ all morning.  
*A. work B. was worked*  
*C. am working D. have been working*
2. He got \_\_\_\_\_ bronchitis and was taken to \_\_\_\_\_ hospital.  
*A. a / a B. the / - C. - / - D. the / a*
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ to take a walk now.  
*A. will B. can C. are going D. will be*
4. It was raining \_\_\_\_\_ so we couldn't go out.  
*A. every days B. all day C. all the days D. all days*
5. \_\_\_\_\_, please. I'll see if the manager is in.  
*A. Hang up B. Hold on C. Ring off D. Ring up*
6. I've decided to join \_\_\_\_\_ this club.  
*A. to B. at C. - D. in*
7. He thanked me for what I \_\_\_\_\_ the previous week.  
*A. have done B. had done C. did D. was doing*
8. \_\_\_\_\_ going to the party.  
*A. Everybody are B. Every people is*  
*C. Every people are D. Everyone is*
9. I'd like to know what you do for \_\_\_\_\_ .  
*A. a job B. work C. a profession D. a living*
10. Mark prefers cycling \_\_\_\_\_ driving.  
*A. than B. for C. to D. as*
11. We are a little late — the play \_\_\_\_\_ begun.  
*A. has just B. just C. is just D. had just*
12. Kate's \_\_\_\_\_ her sister.  
*A. very taller than B. very taller then*  
*C. much taller than D. much taller then*
13. It took years of research, but \_\_\_\_\_ they found the answer.  
*A. at the end B. in the end C. last D. lastly*



---

---

## PREPOSITIONS

---

---

### Ex. 147. Complete the sentences with the prepositions of time.

1. Jack goes shopping ... Sundays. 2. Mary and I had a light lunch ... noon, and then we played tennis ... the afternoon. 3. A: Hi, Jake. It's good to see you again. When I saw you ... December, you were working at the department store. Are you still working there? B: No. I quit ... March 1<sup>st</sup>. ... present, I'm working at Music Shop. ... the future, I hope to have my own shop. 4. ... 1997, we moved to this city. We arrived ... night and couldn't find our new house. We got a hotel room and found the house in the morning. 5. I like to visit friends ... the evening. I don't like to stay home by myself ... night. 6. Excuse me. Are you busy ... the moment? 7. A: When did you and your family go to Copenhagen? B: ... 1991. A: ... the spring or fall? B: We arrived ... May 10 and left ... the 25<sup>th</sup>. 8. What are the most important events that occurred ... nineteenth century?

### Ex. 148. Fill in the prepositions.

1. Billy got mad ... me when I asked him to get up early in the morning. 2. I'm ready ... a change and a better job. I'll choose more carefully ... the future. 3. A: Are you prepared to answer all the questions for the court? B: Yes, I am. A: Where were you ... February 10, 1995, ... exactly 8:30 P.M.? B: I was having dinner with friends. A: Don't you usually work ... the evening? B: I was absent ... work. I was angry ... a co-worker and didn't go to work that day. I left my friends ... midnight. A: No more questions for the witness, Your Honor. 4. A: Are you familiar ... the new musical play downtown? B: I'm told it's very good. We're doing to see it ... the summer. 5. A: What do you do ... Sunday afternoons? B: I go to the amusement park with my family almost every Sunday. A: Oh. Isn't the park full ... people ... Sundays? I hate crowds. B: It's not so bad ... the early afternoon. It gets worse later in the day. 6. My daughter was afraid ... dogs ... the past, but now she's asking me to get her one.

**Ex. 149. Complete the sentences with prepositions.**

1. What are you laughing ... ? 2. I can't stop staring ... Tom's necktie. The colors are wild! 3. A: Do you believe ... flying saucers. Do you? B: I don't know. I think anything is possible. 4. Bill is going to help me ... my homework tonight. 5. Do you mind if I apply ... your job after you quit? 6. I'm travelling ... Germany next week to discuss my new business plan ... our partners in Berlin. 7. I admire Celine ... her courage and honesty in admitting that mistake. 8. A: Where did you get that new car? B: I borrowed it ... my neighbor. 9. What are you arguing ... ? 10. A: Where will you go to study after school next year? B: Well, I applied ... admission at five different universities, but I'm worried that none of them will accept me.

**Ex. 150. Choose the appropriate preposition to fill in the gaps.**

1. Mikhail is always nice ... everyone. 2. A: How long do you need to keep the English book you borrowed ... me? B: I'd like to keep it until I'm ready ... the exam next week. 3. A: Why weren't you more polite ... Bob's friend? B: Because he kept staring ... me all evening. He made me nervous. 4. A: We're going to beat you in the soccer game on Sunday. B: No way. Two of your players are equal ... only one of ours. A: Oh yeah? We'll see. 5. Stop pouring! My cup is already full ... coffee. 6. May I please borrow some money ... you? I'm thirsty ... an ice-cream soda, and we're walking right by the ice-cream shop. 7. A: Do you believe ... astrology? B: I'm really not familiar ... it. 8. A: Tom, I really admire you ... your ability to remember names. Will you help me ... the introductions? B: Sure. Kate, let me introduce you ... Peter, Andrew, Debra, Nora and Nick.

**Ex. 151. Complete the sentences with correct prepositions.**

1. How much did you pay ... that beautiful dress? 2. A: Did you talk ... the manager ... returning that dress? B: No. He didn't arrive ... the shop while I was there. I waited ... her for a half an hour and then left. 3. I listened ... you very carefully, but I didn't understand anything you said. 4. When I graduated ... college, my mother and father told everyone we knew that I had graduated. 5. I paid too much ... this watch. It's not worth it. 6. A: We don't have all day! How long is it going take for someone to wait ... us? I'm hungry. B: We just got here. Be patient. Do you have to complain ... everything? 7. When did you arrive ... New York City? 8. A: This sauce is

delicious! What is it? B: Well, it consists ... tomatoes, garlic, olive oil, and lemon juice all blended together. 9. There were ten people at the meeting and ten different opinions. No one agreed ... anyone else ... the best way to solve the club's financial problems. 10. I have to complain ... the manager. Both the food and the service are terrible.

**Ex. 152. Fill in the gaps with appropriate prepositions.**

1. Everyone is talking ... the explosion in the high school chemistry lab. 2. Karen was absent ... the class six times last term. 3. Fruit consists mostly ... water. 4. Our children are very polite ... adults, but they argue ... their playmates all the time. 5. Three centimeters is equal ... approximately one and a half inches. 6. I'm not ready ... my trip. I haven't packed yet. 7. I borrowed some clothes ... my best friend. 8. Are you familiar ... ancient Greek mythology? 9. I discussed my problem ... my uncle. 10. Someday astronauts will travel ... another solar system. 11. Radjie arrived ... Bombay last Wednesday. 12. Manuel's plane arrived ... the airport in Mexico City two hours ago. 13. I admire you ... your ability to laugh ... yourself when you make a silly mistake. 14. A: Why are you staring ... the wall? B: I'm not. I'm thinking. 15. A: Are you two arguing ... each other ... your in-laws again? B: Do you know what his father did? C: Oh yeah? Listen ... what her sister said. A: Shh. I don't want to hear any of this. Stop complaining ... me ... your relatives. I don't agree ... either of you.

**Ex. 153. Complete the sentences with prepositions that fit best.**

1. "Why are you so friendly ... Jeffry? I thought you didn't like him. — I'm crazy ... his attitude toward his job, but I have to encourage him to do the best he can." 2. A: Do you think it's bad that I drink so much coffee every day? B: I believe too much of almost anything is bad ... you. 3. I don't know why they fired me. It certainly isn't clear ... me. 4. "Dad, I got ninety-five percent on my English exam!" "I'm proud ... you. I knew you could do it." 5. A: You seem to be interested ... aerobic exercise and jogging. B: I think regular physical exercise is good ... everyone. 6. That sweater is very similar ... mine. Did you buy it the mall? 7. Most children are afraid ... noises in the middle of the night. 8. A: You were up awfully late last night. B: I couldn't sleep. I was hungry ... something sweet, and I couldn't find anything in the kitchen. 9. I

have no doubt that I'm doing the right thing. I'm sure ... it.  
10. George Gershwin, an American composer, is most famous ... *Rhapsody in Blue*, an orchestral piece that combines jazz with classical music. 11. A: Why is Ralph avoiding you? Is he angry about something? B: I don't know. I'm not aware ... anything I did that could upset him. 12. A: Who is responsible ... this dog? He's chewing on my desk! B: I'm sorry, sir. She followed me from home. I'll take her outside. 13. My car is a lot like yours, but different ... Margaret's.

**Ex. 154. Complete the sentences with prepositions.**

1. Ask Alice to help you. She knows something ... physics. 2. Something's the matter ... George. He's crying. 3. Do whatever you want. It doesn't matter ... me. 4. Look ... those clouds. It's going to rain. 5. Are you looking forward ... your trip to Canada? 6. "Does this watch belong ... you? — Yes. Where did you find it? I searched ... it everywhere." 7. I woke up frightened after I dreamed ... falling off the roof of the building. 8. Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father ... a ride to school. 9. Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father ... his work. I don't know much ... his new job, and I want to ask him about it. 10. Please empty that bowl of fruit and separate the fresh apples ... the old ones.

**Ex. 155. Complete the sentences with the appropriate prepositions.**

1. Please don't argue. I insist ... lending you the money for your vocation. 2. That thin coat you're wearing won't protect you ... the bitter, cold wind. 3. "What's the matter? Don't you approve ... my behavior?" "No, I don't. I think you are rude." 4. A: "Can I depend ... you to pick up my mother at the airport tomorrow? B: Of course you can. 5. A: The police arrested a thief in my father's office yesterday. B: What's going to happen ... him? Will he go to jail? 6. My friend apologized ... me ... forgetting to pick me up in his car after the movie last night. I forgave him ... leaving me outside the theatre in the rain, but I'm not going to rely ... him for transportation in the future. 7. "Thank you ... helping me move to my new apartment last weekend." "You are welcome." 8. It isn't fair to compare Mr. Harlow ... Ms. Andersen. They're both good teachers, but they have different teaching methods. 9. I've



had a bad cold for a week and just can't get rid ... it. 10. Excuse me ... interrupting you, but I have a call on the other line. Could I get back to you on a second?

**Ex. 156. Insert the appropriate preposition into each gap.**

1. The twins look alike, but Tom's behavior is very different ... Jerry's. 2. I'm sorry ... my behavior last night. I was pretty upset and was just feeling sorry ... myself. I didn't mean anything I said. 3. I spoke ... my brother ... your problem, and he said that there was nothing he could do to help you. 4. All right, children, here is your math problem: add ten ... twelve, subtract two ... that total; divide ten ... that answer; and multiply the result ... five. What is the final answer? 5. I feel pretty good about the final exam in English. I'm hoping ... a good grade, and I'm anxious to get my paper back. 6. Please try to concentrate ... my explanation. I can't repeat it. 7. "Did you hear ... the plans to build a new hotel in the middle of the town? It's wonderful!" "Yes, I heard, but I disagree ... you. I think it's terrible! It means the town will be full of tourists all the time." 8. "Have you heard ... your friend in Singapore recently?" "Yes. She's having a difficult time. She's not accustomed ... hot weather." 9. A: I must tell you ... a crazy thing that happened last night. Have you heard? B: What? What happened? A: A hundred monkeys escaped ... the zoo. B: You must be kidding! How did that happen?

**Ex. 157. Use appropriate prepositions in the following sentences.**

1. I'm ready ... the test. I studied hard. 2. It's important for you to believe ... your own abilities. Tell yourself, "I can do it!" 3. ... the past, people traveled from Europe ... North and South America only by boat. 4. I applied ... a job at a florist's. I like to arrange flowers. 5. I will not discuss this ... you. It's private information. 6. It's not polite to laugh ... other people's information. 7. Magi's house is full ... people. Is she having a party? 8. Listen ... me! 9. John arrived ... the bus stop after the bus had left. 10. I arrived ... the city ... May tenth. 11. Your grades are wonderful! Your mother and I are very proud ... you. 12. I'm looking forward ... my holiday in Spain. 13. Ukraine belongs ... the United Nations. 14. The army protected the president ... his enemies. The rebels attacked the presidential palace. They tried to get rid ... the president by force.

15. A: What are you doing under the sink? B: I'm looking ... my ring. It went down the drain, and I've taken the pipe out. 16. A: Did you hear ... my promotion? B: Yes. They told me to report to you ... noon tomorrow. 17. I'm a little afraid ... flying, so when I was buying an airplane ticket, I asked ... a seat near the front because it was safer near the main door. The person behind me insisted ... having a seat near the back, because he thought it was safer there. The next person paid ... the ticket only after they assured him that he could have a seat over the wing, which he felt was the safest location on the airplane. It's very confusing. ... the future, I think I'll sit wherever they put me. 18. The people of the Hawaiian islands are famous ... their warm hospitality. When we visited the islands, everyone we met was extremely nice ... us. 19. A: Sara is telling Bill something ... you. I think she's complaining ... you. Is she angry ... you? B: I borrowed some money ... her a long time ago, and I never paid her back. I'd better try to see her ... the morning and give her the money I owe her. I'd also apologize ... her ... waiting so long. 20. My math examination consisted ... all of the things I didn't understand during the semester. I couldn't concentrate ... it at all. I'm sure that I didn't pass.

---

---

## MODAL VERBS

---

---

**Ex. 158.** Use the verbs *can* or *may* in the correct form.

1. One ... never know what ... happen. 2. ... you lift this box?  
3. You ... have sent us a note at last! We waited for you the whole day. 4. ... I visit you one of these days? 5. When the fog lifted we ... see where we were. 6. Do you think you ... command an army? 7. She asked me if she ... use the dictionary. 8. Well, your wives ... not like the lady I'm going to marry. 9. The telephone is out of order. I ... not hear anything. 10. Last winter he ... be seen in the club any night. 11. ... you help me a little? 12. What ... Ann be doing all this time in the kitchen? 13. ... read the letter? 14. Whatever the reason ... be, the fact remains. 15. You ... think whatever you like. 16. I ... not walk so quickly. I have a weak heart 17. She ... have lost her ring herself, it ... not have been stolen. 18. Who ... have said such a thing? 19. You ... take the textbook. I don't need it any longer. 20. Somebody ... have given her my address. 21. Such difficulties ... be easily put up with. 22. If only I ... make him understand me properly. 23. I ... have helped him but I didn't receive his letter.

**Ex. 159.** Expressing ability and possibility. Complete the sentences with modal verbs: *can*, *can't*, *may*, or *may not*.

1. I ... play only one musical instrument: the piano. I ... play a guitar. 2. Dark clouds are gathering in the sky. It ... rain soon. 3. Daphne will be your interpreter during your trip to Russia. She ... speak Russian fluently. 4. One minute Sue wants to go to the dinner party. The next minute she doesn't want to go. She can't make up her mind. She ... go to the dinner party tonight, or she ... . 5. You'd better take a book with you to the airport when you go to meet Peter's plane. It ... be late because of the snowstorm in Glasgow. 6. A: What channel is the news special tonight? B: I'm not sure. It ... be Channel Seven. Try that one first. 7. Joan is a runner. She likes to compete, but two days ago she broke her ankle when she fell. She ... run in the race tomorrow. 8. A: Do you remember a

famous actor named Basil Rathbone? Is he still making movies?  
B: I think he ... be dead.

**Ex. 160. Complete the sentences with *can*, *can't*, *might*, or *might not*.**

1. Jane ... hasn't made up her mind about where to go to school. She ... or she ... attend Duke University. She just doesn't know yet. 2. Ducks ... swim well, but chickens ... because they don't have webbed feet. 3. A: What are you going to order? B: I dunno. I ... have hamburger or cheeseburger. 4. A: Karen is in New York now. Is she going to return to school in Miami in September? B: It depends. If she ... find a job in New York, she'll stay there this fall. A: Who knows? She ... stay there through the winter and spring, too. If she likes her job, she ... want to return to her school in Miami next year at all. B: We'll have to wait and see. 5. A: Which one of the oranges is sweet? I like only sweet oranges. B: How should I know? I ... tell if one orange is sweet just by looking at it. ... you? Here. Try this one. It ... be sweet enough for you. If it isn't, put some sugar on it.

**Ex. 161. Fill in the blanks with the verbs *can* or *may* in the correct form.**

1. When you get there tell them to wait. I ... be a little late. 2. I ... come at six. I'll be free by that time. 3. ... this old man be his uncle? He ... not have changed so much! 4. None of us know what ... happen before it is finished. 5. This ... be a great idea. It ... also be a trap in which England will perish. 6. I'm not sure, but she ... have gone to the village shop. 7. I told them he ... be in the garden. 8. Sh! She ... hear you. 9. How strange! ... you believe that? 10. I haven't seen her for ages. She ... be quite middle-aged by now. 11. Don't send him away. We ... need his advice. 12. I fear they ... miss the train. They left rather late. 13. It ... be seen that he was puzzled. 14. Why do what ... never be needed? 15. People ... chatter about her, but they don't know anything definite against her. 16. He ... not have thought of this moment. Who suggested it to him? 17. He ... a medical student though I'm not sure. 18. But what more he ... have said I don't know for I left. 19. You ... tell me what he said! I have a right to know. 20. Miss Reynolds ... have gone to school to call on Mr. Averred. 21. Then he found that he ... not to stay in bed. 22. I ... swim. I expect you .... Everyone ... except me. 23. You ... warned me

beforehand! 24. He ... not have said that. 25. It was a year or two ago, or it ... be three years ago. 26. She came to ask her mother if she ... stay and dance a little longer.

**Ex. 162. Complete the sentences. Use *have to*, *has to*, or *had to* in each sentence.**

1. I went downtown yesterday because I ... . 2. I can't go to the movie tonight because ... . 3. I couldn't go to Pete's party last Saturday because ... . 4. Josh can't go downtown with us this afternoon because ... . 5. When I was in high school, ... . 6. If you want to travel abroad, ... . 7. I'm sorry I was absent from the class yesterday, but ... . 8. Erica can't come to class tomorrow because ... . 9. I need a car because ... . 10. When I worked in my uncle's restaurant, ... . 11. If you want to enter the university, ... . 12. We wanted to go on a picnic yesterday, but we couldn't because ... . 13. I wanted to ... yesterday, but ... instead.

**Ex. 163. Choose the correct completion according to the meaning. Use *must (not)* or *(do not) have to*.**

1. Soldiers ... disobey a superior officer.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*.

2. To stay alive, people ... breathe oxygen.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

3. You ... finish to do your work on this project before you go on vocation. You'll probably lose your job if you don't.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

4. If you have an aquarium, you ... give your tropical fish too much or they'll die.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

5. To be a successful mountain climber, you ... have a great deal of stamina.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

6. Thank goodness we ... eat fish again tonight. Dad didn't catch any today.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

7. You ... exert yourself. You're still not fully recovered from your surgery.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

8. My room is a mess, but I ... clean it before I go out tonight.  
I can do it in the morning.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

9. We really ... help Mary move to her new apartment over the weekend. Not only is it too difficult for one person, but she still has her arm in a sling from her shoulder sprain a week ago.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

10. Bill is in the dark room developing the negatives of the photos he took on his last trip to Peru. You ... open the door while he's there because the light will ruin the pictures.

A: *must / have to*    B: *must not*    C: *don't have to*

**Ex. 164. Complete the sentences with *don't/doesn't have to* or *must not*.**

1. The soup is too hot. You ... eat it yet. Wait for it to cool. 2. You ... have soup for lunch. You can have a sandwich if you like. 3. Liz finally got a car, so now she usually drives to work. She ... take the bus. 4. Tommy, you ... say that word. That's not a nice word. 5. Mr. Moneybags is very rich. He ... work for a living. 6. If you are in a canoe, you ... stand up and walk around. If you do, the canoe will probably tip over. 7. According to the rules of the game, one player ... hit another player. 8. The review class before the final exam is optional. We ... go unless we want to. 9. Most vegetables can be eaten raw. You ... cook them. 10. You ... use a pencil to write a check because someone could change the amount you have written on it. 11. When the phone rings, you ... answer it. It's up to you. 12. When you have a new job, you ... be late the first day. In fact, it is a good idea to be a few minutes early. 13. A: You ... tell Jim about the surprise birthday party. Do you promise? B: I promise. 14. A: Did professor Adams make an assignment? B: Yes, she assigned Chapters 4 and 6, but we ... read Chapter 5. 15. A: I ... forget to set my alarm for 5:30. B: Why do you have to get up so early? A: I'm going to meet Ron at 6:00. We're going fishing. 16. A: Listen to me carefully, Annie. If a stranger offer you a ride, you ... get in the car. Never get in a car with a stranger. Do you understand? B: Yes, Mom. 17. A: Do you have a stamp? B: Uh-huh. Here. A: Thanks. Now I ... go to the post office to buy stamps. 18. A: Children, your mother and I are going to go out this evening. I want you to be good and follow these rules: You ... go outside after dark. It's Saturday night,

so you ... go to bed at eight. You can stay up until eight-thirty. And remember: you ... pull the cat's tail. Okay? B: Okay, Dad.

**Ex. 165. Make logical conclusions. Use *must* or *must not*.**

**Model:** Tom has been working in the hot sun for the last hour. He just drank one glass of water. Right now he is refilling his glass. (*thirsty?*) (E.g.: *Tom must be thirsty.*)

1. I'm at Eric's apartment door. I've knocked on the door and have rung the doorbell several times. Nobody has answered the door. (*at home?*) 2. Brian has a red nose and has been coughing and sneezing. (*have a cold?*) 3. Sly looks tired. She's been coughing and sneezing. (*feel well?*) 4. Andrew has already eaten one sandwich. Now he's making another sandwich. (*hungry?*) 5. When Jim takes a problem to his grandmother, she always know how to help him help solve it. (*very wise?*) 6. Karen has a full academic schedule, plays on the volleyball team, has the lead in the school play, is a cheerleader, takes piano lessons, and has a part-time job at an ice-cream store. (*have a lot of spare time? busy all the time?*) 7. Ron goes to the video store and rents three movies every night. (*like movies a lot? spend much time with his friends and family in the evening?*) 8. Joan reads all the time. She sits in a corner and reads even when people come to visit her. (*love books? like books better than people?*) 9. Jake called Betsy and asked her to go to a movie. Betsy told him that she had to study. She has just hung up, and now she's going to get ready for bed and go to sleep. (*want to go to a movie? be tired? want to hurt Jake's feelings?*)

**Ex. 166. Expressing necessity. Choose the correct completion.**

1. I ... to wash the dishes after dinner last night. It was my turn.  
A: *have*            B: *has*            C: *had*            D: *must*
2. Bye! I'm leaving now. I ... got to take this package to the post office.  
A: *have*            B: *has*            C: *had*            D: *must*
3. I know you didn't mean what you said. You ... think before you speak.  
A: *have*            B: *has*            C: *had*            D: *must*
4. Yesterday everyone in the office ... to leave the building for a fire drill. I'm glad it wasn't a real fire.  
A: *have*            B: *has*            C: *had*            D: *must*

5. Julia ... to take an educational psychology course next semester. It's a required course.

A: *have*      B: *has*      C: *had*      D: *must*

6. Bill, Janet, and Andrew ... to stay after class this afternoon. Professor Jacobson wants them to help him with grade papers.

A: *have*      B: *has*      C: *had*      D: *must*

7. Mr. Rogers, you ... not be late today. The vice-president is coming in, and you are the only one who can answer his questions about the new project.

A: *have*      B: *has*      C: *had*      D: *must*

8. Last year our town didn't have many tourists because of the oil spill. Business was bad. My wife and I own a small souvenir shop near the ocean. We ... to borrow money from the bank last month to save our business.

A: *have*      B: *has*      C: *had*      D: *must*

**Ex. 167. Expressing advice and necessity. Use the given information to discuss the situation. Use expressions like: *ought to, has to, should, might, has got to, had better.***

**Model:** Karen is just recovering from the flu and tires easily. She's at work today.

*Possible responses:*

- *Karen should go directly home from work and get plenty of rest.*
- *She ought to talk to her boss about leaving work early today.*
- *She's got to take care of her health.*
- *She must not get too tired.*
- *She doesn't have to stay at work if she doesn't feel well.*

1. Sarah is fifteen. She doesn't have a driver's license. She's planning to drive her brother's car to her girlfriend's house. Her brother isn't home. Her parents aren't home.

2. Steve is a biology major. Chemistry is a required course for biology majors. Steve doesn't want to take chemistry. He thinks it's boring. He would rather take a course in art, history, creative writing.

3. Jill and Roy are eighteen years old. They are students. Roy doesn't have a job. Jill works part-time as a waitress. Jill and Roy met a month ago. They fell in love. They plan to get married next week.



4. Kathy invited a friend to her apartment for dinner at 8:00 tonight. Right now it's 7:20, and Kathy is unexpectedly in a long and late business meeting with an important client. It takes her 30 minutes to get home from the office. She hasn't got time to shop for food for tonight's dinner.

5. I know a story about a rabbit named Rabbit and a frog named Frog. Rabbit and frog are good friends, but Rabbit's family doesn't like Frog, and Frog's family doesn't like Rabbit. Rabbit's family says, "You shouldn't be friends with Frog. He's too different from us. He's green and has big eyes. He looks strange. You should stay with your own kind." And Frog's family says, "How can you be friends with Rabbit? He's big and clumsy. He's covered with hair and has funny ears. Don't bring Rabbit to our house. What will the neighbors think?"

**Ex. 168. Fill in the blanks with the verbs *can*, *may* or *must*.**

1. I have forgotten my own language and ... speak nothing but yours. 2. We ... go somewhere. We ... not wander about for ever. 3. But I think you ... have told us this half an hour ago! 4. You ... see much of interest here. 5. I didn't hear him return to the room. I ... have been asleep. 6. You ... have mistaken him, my dear. He ... not intended to say that. 7. It seemed possible they ... return. 8. It ... not have happened at Ainswick. 9. No good looking back; things happen as they ... . 10. To be ashamed of his own father is perhaps the bitterest experience a young man ... go through. 11. How ... you let things slide like that, Billy? 12. I think you ... be glad of some coffee before you start back to your hotel. It's such a cold night. 13. I was known — whispered among the old, discussed among the young — that the family pride ... soon receive a blow. 14. And though he undressed and got into bed he ... not sleep. 15. You ... go out so late at night. 16. Somebody is knocking at the door. It ... be John. — It ... not be John. It's too early for him to be back. 17. I don't know for certain, but he ... have been a sailor in his youth. 18. They ... ask me about him. What should I say?

**Ex. 169. Open the brackets using the correct form of the infinitive. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. George must (*be*) ... pleased that he has passed his examination. 2. I found this baby bird at the foot of the tree. It must (*fall*) ...

from a nest. 3. During the storm, the captain was on the bridge the whole time. He must (**be**) ... exhausted afterwards. 4. If Diane left here at five o'clock, he must (**be**) ... home by now. 5. Look, there's a tree right across the road! So there is. It must (**be**) ... blown by the gale last night. 6. I sat on a seat in the park and now my coat is covered in green stripes. The paint must (**be**) ... wet. 7. As soon as I switched on my new electric cooker there was an explosion. There must (**be**) ... something wrong with it. 8. I don't know at what time I went to bed last night, but it was late. It must (**be**) ... after midnight. 9. Look, the streets are wet; it must (**rain**) ... now. 10. He promised to come at six, but he didn't. He must (**forget**) ... his promise. 11. I didn't hear the telephone. I must (**be**) ... asleep. 12. He must (**be**) ... very careless if he makes such mistakes. 13. The baby woke up when she went into the bedroom. She must (**make**) ... a noise. 14. The taxi-driver got to the airport in half an hour. He must (**drive**) ... very fast. 15. He never got the letter. It must (**send**) ... to the wrong address.

**Ex. 170. Use the correct form of the infinitive in the brackets. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. I should (**send**) ... him a birthday card, but I forgot to. 2. He didn't mean to be rude; you shouldn't (**be**) ... so angry with him yesterday. 3. It's three o'clock and I'm feeling very hungry; I should (**eat**) ... more for lunch. 4. The little boy was playing with his father's typewriter and, of course, he broke it; he shouldn't (**allow**) ... to play with it. 5. The old man ran to catch the bus, although he had a weak heart. He shouldn't (**run**) ... . 6. I was so tired last summer and I should (**take**) ... a holiday, but there was too much work to do. 7. When he went into his bedroom, he found it icy cold; he shouldn't (**leave**) ... the windows open. 8. The workmen are very slow; the job should (**finish**) ... a week ago. 9. To someone who was not at the party: "We had wonderful time; you should (**be**) ... there". 10. You should (**cross**) ... the road by the subway, (*but you didn't*). 11. You shouldn't (**go**) out yesterday without a coat. No wonder you caught a cold. 12. He should (**check**) that his brakes were working properly, (*but he didn't*). 13. He should (**thank**) ... us, (*we are offended that he didn't*). 14. You should (**warn**) ... him that the ice was dangerous, (*but you didn't*). 15. Mother (*very anxious about her son, aged ten*): "Where is he? He should (**be**) ... here an hour ago!" (*It's now 5:00 and he usually comes home by 4:00.*) 16. Phil's had another

er accident. He came out of a side road rather faster and a lorry crashed into him. It sounds like Phil's fault. He should (*wait*) ... till the main road was clear. 17. I had to walk to work yesterday: I had no money for my fare. — You should (*tell*) ... me! I would (*lend*) you the money. 18. Why are you so late? You should (*be*) ... here two hours ago! 19. Bryan (*looking out of the window*): "Fortunately that teapot didn't hit anyone, but you shouldn't (*throw*) ... it out of the window, Alice! You could have killed someone."

**Ex. 171. Use *must, should or need* to fill the blanks.**

1. I'm suggesting that you ... marry me, Magi. 2. She ... be picking cherries in the orchard, tell her to come into the house. 3. "Well," said Emily with calm, "you ... not get into such fusses when we tell you things." 4. Is it necessary, do you think, that the police ... know about it? 5. You ... not be afraid of him. He's a kind old man. 6. It is essential that he ... be prepared for it. 7. Soft music filled the room. "That ... be a nice record," thought he. 8. I propose that the prize ... be divided. 9. Oh, I don't know. It's really rather odd that he ... ever have been taking her to the Ball. 10. You ... have seen that film when it was here last week. 11. It is strange that you ... remember there place. 12. Why ... not I talk to Kate? Do you think I'm not worthy to, or something? 13. Poor boy! He ... have suffered so. 14. You ... not answer all my questions if you don't want to. 15. Why ... you say such disagreeable things? 16. Go upstairs at once. You ... change your wet clothes. 17. It was only proper that Dorothy, who was young and healthy, ... give her seat to that old lady. 18. I think I'll come on time, but if I ... be late, please keep a seat for me. 19. He ordered that the gate ... be locked. 20. She confiscated the morning papers so that the children ... not see them. 21. You ... not wake up before seven o'clock. We'll start at half past eight. 22. "I was just wondering if my wife was here" "No, she isn't here. Why ... she be?" 23. You ... not work so hard after your illness. 24. Gerda suggested to Henry that they ... go and look at the kitchen garden.

**Ex. 172. Use *should, need, have to* with the appropriate infinitive form to fill the blanks.**

1. We ... (*to prepare*) for my coming exam yesterday, but I ... (*to look after*) my sick sister. 2. He ... not (*to get up*) early. He begins working at 9:30. 3. "I ... (*to say*) those wonderful words," he re-

proached himself. 4. It isn't the sort of thing one ... (*to discuss*) with unknown people. 5. You ... not (*to walk*) all the way to the station. You ... (*to take*) a bus round the corner. 6. You ... not (*to worry*) about the money. I've got enough for both of us. 7. Sooner or later one ... (*to choose*). 8. Mother ... (*to get up and down*) a good bit during the meal, fetching things back and forward. 9. I managed to get there at half past twelve. But I ... not (*to hurry*). They had already left. 10. Breakfast is often a quick meal, because the father of the family ... (*to get*) away to his work, children ... (*to go*) to school, and the mother has her housework to do. 11. If you are interested in historic places you ... (*to go*) to the Westminster Abbey. 12. She drew a chair near his — he wondered if he ... (*to help*) her with the chair — and sat down beside him. 13. They ... (*to knock*) twice before the door was opened. 14. She ... (*not to give*) money to her boy. Then it wouldn't have opened. 15. She ... (*to conceal*) her real feelings lest anyone ... (*to notice*) how unhappy she was. 16. You ... (*to come*) yourself. You may send somebody else.

**Ex. 173. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate modal verb.**

1. He has insulted our family and he ... suffer for it! 2. You ... not have gone out without an umbrella in such rainy weather. 3. I'm afraid I ... have sounded a bit unfriendly over the phone. 4. "I ... to have told Soames," he thought, "that I think him comic." 5. Here she ... sit, sewing and knitting, while he worked at the table. 6. Why ... you be different from other people? 7. "Good morning," said the girl. "I believe you ... be Bill. Have I suggested right?" 8. If you ... read without spectacles, and I believe you ..., be so good, as to read this letter for me. 9. Captain Steerforth, ... I speak to you for a moment? 10. Joy felt she ... not stand much more of this discussion. She said she ... go on with her work and began to rise. 11. Why ... one make trouble for oneself when one is old? 12. ... you do me a favor and meet her at the station? 13. He was not old, he ... not have been more than forty. 14. The day we ... to start it rained worse than ever. 15. You ... not hurry. There is plenty of time. 16. Mother had fallen ill, so I ... to change my plans. 17. We didn't know what to do: the key ... not turn and we ... not get into the room. 18. I ... not to have left Cape Town last night. I wish I had not. 19. "... I speak to Mr. Gore, please?" "I'm afraid he's out at the moment. ... you ring back later?"

**Ex. 174. Translate the sentences paying attention to the modal verb *to be to*.**

1. I was to wait for her at the railway station. 2. We were to go to the cinema that afternoon. 3. They were to start Monday. 4. He was to telephone the moment she was out of danger. 5. Roses were to be planted round the pond. 6. There was to be a discussion later on. 7. We were to get there before the others. 8. He was to tell her where to find us. 9. She was to graduate that year. 10. She was to wear that dress at the graduation party. 11. He is to come here at five o'clock. 12. The train was to leave at five-fifteen.

**Ex. 175. Paraphrase the following sentences using the modal verb *to be to*.**

1. What am I supposed to do if they come too early? 2. It was arranged that the youngest children would play on the beach. 3. We expect you to show her the place. 4. I am expected to leave tomorrow at the latest. 5. Where am I supposed to be taken? 6. This is Angela. It is arranged that she will share the room with you. 7. And who will do the cooking? 8. It is expected that two more apartment houses will be built here. 9. It was arranged that the cup final would be played that afternoon. 10. Who will meet you at the station?

**Ex. 176. Use the modal verbs *to have to* or *to be to* to fill the gaps.**

1. She ... to send a telegram because it was too late to send a letter. 2. They decided that she ... to send them a telegram every tenth day. 3. You ... to learn all the new words for the next lesson. 4. Do you know this man? He ... to be our new teacher of English. 5. "Who ... to go to the library to get new books?" "I was , but I couldn't because I ... to finish some work at the phonetic laboratory." 6. It is raining. You ... to put on your raincoat. 7. "The patient ... to stay in bed for a few days," ordered the doctor. 8. The child had a stomach trouble and ... to take castor oil. 9. I told her she ... to open the window for a while every day. 10. The agreement was that if Johnny White could not repay the money he had borrowed, then Luke Flint ... to have the right to sell the land. 11. If I don't ring up before six o'clock, then you ... to go to the concert hall alone and wait for me at the entrance. Is that clear? 12. The planters ... to gather their cotton at once, as they had been warned that heavy rains were expected. 13. I ... to wear glasses as my eyesight is very weak.

14. Johnny White ... to borrow from Luke Flint at high interest, for there was no one else in the district who lent money. 15. "Cheating is very nasty thing," said the teacher, "and we ... to get rid of it."

**Ex. 177. Use modal verbs *to have to* or *to be to* in the following sentences.**

1. "Where ... the lecture to take place?" "I suppose in the assembly hall." 2. So, our plan is as follows: I ... to go to the library and bring the books. You ... to look through all the material here. Later we ... to work together. 3. "You ... to do it alone, without anybody's help," she said sternly. 4. I ... to help my friends with this work now, so I cannot go with you. 5. It was raining hard and we ... to wait until it stopped raining. 6. I ... to ask him about it tomorrow, as today he has already gone. 7. Why didn't you tell me that I ... to buy the books? 8. According to the order of the schoolmistress all the pupils ... to return the library books before the first of June. 9. As we had agreed before, we ... to meet at two o'clock to go to the stadium together. But Mike didn't come. I waited for another half-hour, but then I ... to leave as I was afraid to be late. 10. The meeting ... to begin at five o'clock. Don't be late.

**Ex. 178. Give an advice using the modal verb *should* with the appropriate form of the Infinitive: Indefinite Infinitive — Perfect Infinitive and the words in brackets *you should do, you should have done*. Positive or negative answers are possible.**

1. The boy is a little pale. (*to play outdoors*). 2. So I took the child to the cinema. (*film finished late*). 3. I am afraid you will miss that train. (*to take a taxi*). 4. We forgot to leave a message for her (*she, to worry*). 5. There is no one in. (*to try the room next door*). 6. We didn't wait for them because it was starting to rain (*to take umbrellas with you*). 7. I have a slight irritation in my throat (*to smoke less*). 8. I didn't put down her address and now I don't know how to find her. 9. This child doesn't want to eat soup (*not give her sweets before dinner*). 10. I didn't explain to her how to get here. 11. She makes a lot of spelling mistakes (*to copy passages out of a book*). 12. I bought a pair of red shoes to go with my new dress. 13. The dog is afraid of him. (*not to shout at the dog*). 14. So I told her frankly what we all thought about her idea. 15. The students

are unable to follow what I am saying (**not to speak so fast**).  
16. I have not seen the film, and now it is too late because it is no longer on. 17. My pen was leaking, so I wrote with a pencil. 18. I am afraid I ate too much cake with my tea.

**Ex. 179. Comment on the following actions, using modal verbs *should*, *shouldn't* or *needn't*.**

**Model:** A boy was impolite to the teacher and didn't apologize.  
*You should have apologized to the teacher.*

What will you say to the person who:

- bought bread which was not necessary?
- was not present at the meeting?
- sent a telegram which was quite unnecessary?
- went out without his coat and caught a cold?
- apologized for asking you a question?
- didn't attend a very important lecture?
- got up at 6:00 on Sunday morning, which was not at all necessary?
- read till two o'clock in the morning?
- copied the whole text into his exercise-book?
- watered the garden, and it is raining now?
- hasn't returned the books to the library?
- crossed the street under the red light?
- doesn't cross the street when the lights are green?
- doesn't want to cross the street by the subway?
- doesn't take off his hat when entering a room?
- didn't help his mother to clean the room at home?
- has a splitting headache?

**Ex. 180. Modals. Choose the correct form of the verbs.**

1. You (**must be / can be**) very proud of your son winning so many prizes.
2. We thought our cousins would visit us when they were in town last week, but they didn't even phone. I suppose they (**must be / must have been**) too busy.
3. The film has been such a big success I guess it (**must be / can't be**) easy to get tickets to see it.
4. I'm sure you could mend this if you really tried. You (**must be / can't be**) using the right tools.

5. I've just rung the garage to check whether they've fixed my car, but I can't get an answer. I suppose they (***might have / may be having***) a tea break out in the yard.
6. I don't know why you wanted to stay at the party. You (***might have enjoyed / can't have enjoyed***) talking to all those boring people.
7. I can't go out this morning. We're getting a new sofa and the store (***may be delivering / must be delivering***) it today.
8. You'll have to check these figures again. There are not accurate. You (***might have been concentrating / can't have been concentrating***) when you added them up.
9. You (***must be / must have been***) thirsty after carrying those heavy boxes. Shall I make some tea?

**Ex. 181. Choose the correct form of the verbs.**

1	Why did you walk all the way from the station? You ...for a lift.	<b><i>could phone / could have phoned</i></b>
2	I loved staying with my grandparents when I was a child. They let me read all the books in the house and told me I ... go to bed as late as I wanted.	<b><i>could / was able to</i></b>
3	This carpet is priced at €500, but I ... . Get a discount because of this little mark in the corner.	<b><i>could / was able to</i></b>
4	I ... my diary for days. It's terribly inconvenient.	<b><i>have found / haven't been able to find</i></b>
5	As soon as she opened the door I ... see from her face that something terrible had happened.	<b><i>could / was able to</i></b>
6	I've no idea where my brother is living now. He ... at the North Pole for all I know.	<b><i>can / could be</i></b>
7	It's difficult to understand how explorers survive the conditions they encounter in the Antarctic. I'm sure I ... .	<b><i>can't / couldn't</i></b>
8	Why did I listen to you? I ... at home by now instead of sitting here in the cold.	<b><i>can be / could have been</i></b>
9	The day started off misty, but by the time we had reached the mountain the sun had appeared and we ... climb it quite quickly.	<b><i>could / were able to</i></b>

**Ex. 182. Fill in the gaps using *had better*, *should*, or *have to*.**

OK, well, as you haven't done this trip before I (1) ... give you a few tips to save you time and hassle.



First, you (2) ... make sure you get to the airport really early because you always (3) ... queue for ages at check-in. They really (4) ... introduce a more efficient system, but they won't. Anyway, then you (5) ... go through passport control and so on. You (6) ... take something good to read because you'll have quite a long wait in the departure lounge. At least you (7) ... be able to sit down there.

They (8) ... more seats, in my opinion. When your flight is called, you (9) ... follow an official out of your plane. You (10) ... not take very heavy hand luggage because you (11) ... carry it yourself and there aren't any trolleys. Everyone agrees there (12) ... be, of course, but there aren't, the flight is quite short. You get a meal, which you (13) ... eat, even if it's not very appetizing, because you have a long bus journey at the other end. The hotel is nice. I'm sure you'll like it. Now, do you have any questions?



---

---

## GERUND. INFINITIVE

---

---

### Common verbs followed by GERUNDS

#### VERB + GERUND:

*enjoy, quit (give up), avoid, consider (think about), appreciate, finish (get through), mind, postpone (put off), discuss (talk about), stop, delay, mention, keep (keep on), suggest.*

### Common verbs followed by INFINITIVES

#### GROUP A: VERB + INFINITIVE:

*hope to, plan to, intend to, decide to, promise to, agree to, offer to, refuse to, seem to, appear to, pretend to, ask to, expect to, would like to, want to, need to.*

#### GROUP B: VERB + (PRO)NOUN + INFINITIVE:

*tell someone to, advise someone to, encourage someone to, remind someone, invite someone to, permit someone to, allow someone to, warn someone to, require someone to, order someone to, force someone to, ask someone to, expect someone to, would like someone to, want someone to, need someone to.*

#### Ex. 183. Use the Gerund form of the verbs in brackets.

A: 1. Some students dislike (*take*) ... tests. 2. Some students enjoy (*talk*) ... in class. 3. Some students put off (*do*) ... their homework. 4. Some students practice (*speak*) ... English at work. 5. Some students avoid (*answer*) ... questions in class. 6. Some students admit not (*study*) ... for the test.

B: An estimated 53 million Americans smoke. Smokers risk (*to get*) ... heart disease, cancer, or emphysema (a lung disease). The Surgeon General reports that 30 percent of all cancer deaths are related to smoking. Cigarette packages now contain a warning which reads: "The Surgeon General has determined that cigarette smoking is dangerous to your health." The smoke that is exhaled by smokers can also harm the nonsmoker. To accommodate nonsmokers, airlines and many restaurants permit (*to smoke*) ... in certain areas only and forbid (*to smoke*) ... in special sections. Smokers usu-

ally recognize the dangers of smoking and would like to quit. However, it is very difficult to quit (*to smoke*) ... . Some doctors suggest (*to go*) ... “cold turkey”, that is, (*to stop*) ... completely. Other doctors might recommend (*to go*) ... to special clinics or (*undergo*) ... hypnosis to learn to break the habit little by little. Many people regret (*to start*) ... to smoke because of the difficulty in quitting.

**Ex. 184. Complete the sentences using Gerunds.**

1. When Sue got tired, she stopped ... 2. Would you mind ... the door? Thanks. 3. The weather will get better soon. We can leave as soon as it quits ... 4. The police officer told him to stop, but the thief kept ... 5. I enjoy ... a long walk every morning. 6. I have a lot of homework tonight, but I'd still like to go with you later on. I'll call you when I get through ... 7. I would like to have some friends over. I'm thinking about ... a dinner party. 8. He told a really funny joke. We couldn't stop ... 9. Jack almost had an automobile accident. He avoided ... another car at the intersection of 4<sup>th</sup> and Elm. 10. Where are you considering ... for vocation? 11. Sometimes I put off ... my homework. 12. You have to decide where to go to school next year. You can't postpone ... that decision much longer. 13. I wanted to go to Mexico. Sam suggested ... to China. 14. Tony mentioned ... the bus to school instead of walking. 15. I appreciate ... able to study in peace and quiet.

**Ex. 185. Use either Gerund or Infinitive to complete each sentence.**

1. We're going out for dinner. Would you like ... us? 2. Jack avoided ... at me. 3. Fred didn't have any money, so we decided ... a job. 4. The teacher reminded the students ... their assignments. 5. Do you enjoy ... soccer? 6. I was broke, so Alice offered ... me a little money. 7. Mrs. Allen promised ... tomorrow. 8. My boss expects me ... this work ASAP. 9. Jane had to go out again because she had forgotten ... some bread at the market. 10. Even though I asked the people in front of me at the movie ... quiet, they kept .... 11. Jill and Peter were considering ... married in June, but they finally decided ... until August. 12. Our teacher encourages us ... a dictionary whenever we are uncertain of the spelling of a word. 13. Before I left home to go away to college, my mother reminded me ... her a letter at least once a week. 14. Mrs. Jackson warned her young son ...

the hot stove. She was afraid he would burn his fingers. 15. I don't mind ... alone. 16. The teacher seems ... in a good mood today, don't you think? 17. Lucy pretended ... the answer to my question. 18. Dick intends ... his friend a letter. 19. Residents are not allowed ... pets in my apartment building. 20. All applicants are required ... an entrance examination. 21. Someone asked me ... this package. 22. I was asked ... this package. 23. Jack advised me ... a new apartment. 24. I was advised ... a new apartment. 25. Jack suggested ... a new apartment. 26. Ann advised her sister ... the plane instead of driving to London. 27. Ann advised ... the plane instead of driving to London.

**Ex. 186. Gerund or Infinitive. Select the correct answer for each sentence.**

1. Whenever we met, Jack avoided ... at me. (*A: to look, B: looking*) 2. Most people enjoy ... to different parts of the world. (*A: to travel, B: travelling*) 3. Mag needs ... another job. Her present company is going out of business. (*A: to find, B: finding*) 4. May I change the TV channel, or do you want ... more of this program? (*A: to watch, B: watching*) 5. Lily is considering ... her major from pre-med studies to psychology. (*A: to change, B: changing*) 6. Although Joe slammed on his brakes, he couldn't avoid ... the small dog that suddenly darted out in front of his car. (*A: to hit, B: hitting*) 7. I hope ... my autobiography before I die. Do you think anyone would read it? (*A: to write, B: writing*) 8. Joyce thanked us for ... them to dinner and said that they wanted to have us over for dinner next week. (*A: to invite, B: inviting*) 9. If you delay ... your bills, you will only incur more and more interest charges. (*A: to pay, B: paying*) 10. My lawyer advised me not ... anything further about the accident. (*A: to say, B: saying*) 11. A procrastinator is one who habitually postpones ... things, especially tasks that are unpleasant. (*A: to do, B: doing*) 12. You should plan ... at the stadium early or you won't be able to get good seats. (*A: to arrive, B: arriving*) 13. My mom asked me ... up some eggs at the supermarket on my way home from work. (*A: to pick, B: picking*) 14. Nobody has offered ... the house next door, so I think they're going to lower the price. (*A: to buy, B: buying*) 15. The highway patrol advises ... the old route through the city because the interstate highway is under major repairs. (*A: to take, B: taking*) 16. Would you mind ...

that apple for me? My arthritis is acting up in my right hand. (A: *to peel*, B: *peeling*) 17. Stop ... me! I'll get everything finished before I go to bed. (A: *to nag*, B: *nagging*) 18. When the university suggested ... the tuition again, the student senate protested vigorously. (A: *to raise*, B: *raising*) 19. Are we permitted ... to the ceremony? I'd like to invite my friend to join us. (A: *to bring*, B: *bringing*) 20. The city council agreed ... the architect's proposed design for a new parking garage. (A: *to accept*, B: *accepting*)

**Ex. 187. Verbs followed by Infinitives. Choose the most appropriate verb in brackets to restate the given sentences. Make it active or passive as appropriate. Include an Infinitive in the completion and any other necessary words.**

**Model:** The teacher said to Jim, "Would you give your book to Mary, please?" (*ask, tell, order*)

The teacher *asked Jim to give* his book to Mary.

1. The sign said, "No parking in this area. Violators will be towed away. Drivers (*invite, warn, force*) ... in the area. 2. Before Bobby went to bed, his father said, "Don't forget to brush your teeth." Before Bobby went to bed, his father (*invite, allow, remind*) ... his teeth. 3. Under the law, drivers and all passengers must wear seat belts while in a moving vehicle. Drivers and passengers (*encourage, require, permit*) ... seat belts while in a moving vehicle. 4. When I asked the nurse about my skin rash, she said, "You should consult a dermatologist." The nurse (*ask, permit, advise*) ... a dermatologist. 5. The fire chief said, "Everyone must leave the building immediately." Everyone (*order, remind, allow*) ... the building immediately. 6. The instructor said to the students, "You will have exactly one hour to complete the exam." The students (*order, expect, warn*) ... the exam in one hour. 7. Because he forgot last year, I told my husband several times that he should buy some flowers for his mother on Mother's Day. I (*remind, require, allow*) ... some flowers for his mother on Mother's Day. 8. My garage mechanic said, "You should get a tune-up every 5,000 miles." My garage mechanic (*ask, order, advise*) ... a tune-up every 5,000 miles. 9. The factory manager said to the employees, "Do not come late. If you do, you will lose your jobs." The employees (*ask, warn, encourage*) ... late. 10. The sign on the side door says, "Do not enter," so we have to use a different door. Nobody (*ask, permit, force*) ... the

side door. 11. The little girl said to her father, “Daddy, I really like this tricycle. Can we buy it?” The little girl (*require, ask, force*) ... a tricycle for her. 12. We often told our grandfather, “Your experiences as a sailor in the navy were fascinating. You should write a book about them.” We (*remind, encourage, require*) ... a book about his experiences in the navy. 13. The judge said to the defendant, “You must not shout in the courtroom again.” The defendant (*ask, order, encourage*) ... in the courtroom again.

**Ex. 188. Complete the sentences with either Gerund or Infinitive, using the words in brackets.**

1. The store offered (*refund*) ... the money I paid for the book I returned. 2. Don't pretend (*be*) ... what you aren't. 3. I persuaded my brother-in-law not (*buy*) ... that old car. 4. Karen denied (*throw*) ... the brick through the window. 5. My father expects me (*get*) ... high marks at school. 6. According to the sign on the restaurant door, all diners are required (*wear*) ... shirts and shoes. 7. We are planning (*visit*) ... several historical sites in London. 8. There appears (*be*) ... no way to change our reservation for the play at this late date. 9. For some strange reason, I keep (*think*) ... today is Saturday. 10. All of the members agreed (*attend*) ... the emergency meeting. 11. I've arranged (*leave*) ... work early tomorrow. 12. Even though Pat had never cut anyone's hair before, she really consented (*cut*) ... her husband's hair. 13. Mary decided (*ignore*) ... her friend's critical remarks. 14. My roommate says I have a terrible voice, so I stopped (*sing*) ... in the shower. 15. Did the doctor mention (*avoid*) ... any food in particular? 16. The cashier always remembers (*count*) ... the money in her cash register each day before she leaves work. 17. Let's hurry! We must finish (*paint*) ... the office before 3:00 this afternoon. 18. The student with the highest average deserves (*get*) ... an “A”. 19. I appreciate your (*pay*) ... for my dinner. I'll buy next time. 20. The physically handicapped child struggled (*keep*) ... up with the other children on the playground, but she couldn't. 21. Lora misses (*take*) ... walks with her father in the evening now that she has moved away from home. 22. The customs official demanded (*know*) ... what was inside the gift-wrapped box. 23. We've discussed (*move*) ... to New York in the fall, but I'm worried about our children having to adjust to a new school system and new

friends. 24. Children shouldn't be allowed (*watch*) ... violent programs on TV. 25. In a fit of anger, I ordered my neighbor (*keep*) ... his mule off my property.

**Ex. 189. Use Verb + Gerund or Infinitive . Choose the correct completion.**

1. I would like ... you and some of my other friends for dinner sometime. (*A: inviting, B: to invite*) 2. I enjoyed ... with my family at the lake last summer. (*A: being, B: to be*) 3. Bob agreed ... me move out of my apartment this weekend. (*A: helping, B: to help*) 4. My parents can't afford ... all of my college expenses. (*A: paying, B: to pay*) 5. Mary, would you mind ... this letter on your way home? (*A: mailing, B: to mail*) 6. Do you expect ... this course? If so, you'd better work harder. (*A: passing, B: to pass*) 7. Angela offered ... for me tonight because I feel awful. (*A: working, B: to work*) 8. I refuse ... your proposal. I've made up my mind. (*A: considering, B: to consider*) 9. I wish you consider ... my proposal. I know I can do the job. (*A: accepting, B: to accept*) 10. I don't think I'll ever finish ... this report. It just goes on and on. (*A: writing, B: to write*) 11. I would enjoy ... you in Kiev while you're studying there. (*A: visiting, B: to visit*) 12. The children seem ... why they have to stay home tonight. (*A: understanding, B: to understand*) 13. Don't forget ... all of the doors before you go to bed. (*A: locking, B: to lock*) 14. I'm really sorry. I didn't mean ... your feelings. (*A: hurting, B: to hurt*) 15. Why do you keep ... me the same question over and over again? (*A: asking, B: to ask*) 16. I've decided ... for another job. I'll never be happy here. (*A: looking, B: to look*) 17. You need ... harder if you want to get the information. (*A: trying, B: to try*) 18. Why do you pretend ... his company? I know you don't like him. (*A: enjoying, B: to enjoy*) 19. Let's get together tonight. I want to talk about ... a new business. (*A: opening, B: to open*) 20. I have a secret. Do you promise ... no one? (*A: telling, B: to tell*) 21. The president plans ... everyone a bonus at the end of the year. (*A: giving, B: to give*) 22. I have a good job, and I hope ... myself all through school. (*A: supporting, B: to support*) 23. I can't wait ... work today. I'm taking off on vacation tonight. (*A: finishing, B: to finish*) 24. My neighbor and I get up at six every morning and go .... (*A: jogging, B: to jog*)

**Ex. 190. Use Verb + Gerund or Infinitive. In some cases both answers may be correct.**

1. I want (**A: watching, B: to watch**) ... the comedy special on TV tonight. 2. I'm a people-watcher. I like (**A: watching, B: to watch**) ... people in public places. 3. I've already begun (**A: collecting, B: to collect**) ... ideas for my new novel. 4. A group of Ukrainian scientists plan (**A: presenting, B: to present**) ... their discovery at the world conference next spring. 5. Every time I wash my car, it starts (**A: raining, B: to rain**) .... 6. Connie and I continued (**A: talking, B: to talk**) ... for several hours. 7. I love (**A: walking, B: to walk**) ... on the beach during a storm. 8. I would love (**A: taking, B: to take**) ... a walk today. 9. Are you sure you don't mind (**A: watching, B: to watch**) ... Bill for me while I go to the store? 10. Bonny hates (**A: driving, B: to drive**) ... in the rain. 11. My roommate can't stand (**A: listening, B: to listen**) ... to really loud rock music. 12. I don't like (**A: singing, B: to sing**) ... in front of other people. 13. Would you like (**A: going, B: to go**) ... to the concert with us? 14. Most children can't wait (**A: opening, B: to open**) ... their parents' presents on Christmas.

### REMEMBER

#### Passive and past forms of Infinitives and Gerunds.

**Passive Infinitive:** *to be + past participle*

(I didn't expect *to be invited* to his party.)

**Passive Gerund:** *being + past participle*

(I appreciate *being invited* to your home.)

**Past Infinitive:** *to have + past participle*

(The rain seems *to have stopped*.)

**Past Gerund:** *having + past participle*

(I appreciate *having had* the opportunity to meet you.)

**Past-Passive Infinitive:** *to have been + past participle*

(Jane is fortunate *to have been given* a scholarship.)

**Past-Passive Gerund:** *having been + past participle*

(I appreciate *having been told* the news)

**Ex. 191. Supply an appropriate form for each verb in brackets.**

1. I don't enjoy (*laugh*) ... at by other people. 2. I'm angry at him for (*tell, not*) ... me the truth. 3. It is easy (*fool*) ... by his lies. 4. Peter had a narrow escape. He was almost hit by a car. He barely



avoided (*hit*) ... by the speeding automobile. 5. Sarah wants us to tell her the news as soon as we hear anything. If we find out anything about the problem, she wants (*tell*) ... about it immediately. 6. Yesterday Lisa wrote a check for fifty dollars, but when she wrote it she knew she didn't have enough money in the bank to cover it. Today she is very worried about (*write*) ... that check. She has to find a way to put some money in her account right away. 7. A: What's the difference between "burn up" and "burn down"? B: Hmmm. That's an interesting question. I don't recall ever (*ask*) ... that question before. 8. Living in a foreign country has been a good experience for me. I am glad that my company sent me to another country to study. I am very pleased (*give*) ... the opportunity to learn about another culture. 9. You must tell me the truth. I insist on (*tell*) ... truth. 10. Don't all of us want (*love*) ... and (*need*) ... by other people? 11. I enjoy (*watch*) ... television in the evenings. 12. Dear Paul: I feel guilty about (*write, not*) ... to you sooner, but I've been swamped with work lately.

**Ex. 192. Supply an appropriate form for each verb in brackets.**

1. Marisa doesn't like to have her picture taken. She avoids (*photograph*) ... . 2. James was in the army during the war. He was caught by the enemy but he managed to escape. He is lucky (*escape*) ... with his life. 3. A: It's been nice talking to you. I really have enjoyed our conversation, but I have to leave now. I'm very happy (*have*) ... this opportunity to meet you and talk with you. Let's try to get together again soon. B: I'd like that. 4. A: Is Tom a transfer student? B: Yes. A: Where did he go to school before he came here? B: I'm not sure, but I think he mentioned something about (*go*) ... to UCLA or USC. 5. A: You know John Carthorse, don't you? B: John Carthorse? I don't think so. I don't recall ever (*meet*) ... him. 6. A: This letter needs (*send*) ... immediately. Will you take care of it? B: Right away. 7. Sam is very quick. You have to tell him how to do something only once. He doesn't need (*tell*) ... twice. 8. A: I thought Sally was sick. B: So did I. But she seems (*recover*) ... very quickly. She certainly doesn't seem (*be*) ... sick now. 9. Last year I studied abroad. I appreciate (*have*) ... the opportunity to live and study in a foreign country. 10. This year I am studying abroad. I appreciate (*have*) ... this opportunity to live and study in a foreign country. 11. Ms. Walters complained about (*tell, not*) ... about the meeting.

In the future, she expects (*inform*) ... of any and all meetings.

**Ex. 193. Translate the sentences. Pay attention to the Gerund forms.**

1. *Watching* football matches may be exciting, but of course it is more exciting *playing* football. 2. She stopped *coming* to see us, and I wondered what had happened to her. 3. Can you remember *having seen* the woman before? 4. My friend was terrified of *having to speak* to anybody, and even more, of *being spoken to*. 5. He was on the point of *leaving* the office, when the secretary stopped him. 6. After *being corrected* by the professor, the student's report was returned to him. 7. I wondered at my father's *having allowed* the journey. 8. I understand perfectly your *wishing* to start the work at once. 9. Everybody will discuss the event, there is no way of *preventing* it. 10. At last he broke the silence by *inviting* everybody to walk into the dining room. 11. On *being told* the news she turned pale. 12. The film is worth *watching*. 13. *Having been* carefully *read* and corrected by the secretary, the text contained no more mistakes.

**Gerund and Passive Infinitive following *need***

- (a) I *need to borrow* some money.
- (b) John *needs to be told* the truth.
- (c) The house *needs painting*.
- (d) The house *needs to be painted*.

(Usually (c) and (d) have the same meaning, they carry a passive meaning.)

**Ex. 194. Supply an appropriate form for each verb in brackets. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. The chair is broken. I need (*fix*) ... it. The chair needs (*fix*) ...  
2. What a mess! This room needs (*clean*) ... up. We need (*clean*) ... it up before the company arrives. 3. The baby's diaper needs (*change*) ... . It's wet. 4. My shirt is wrinkled. It needs (*iron*) ... 5. There is a hole in our roof. The roof needs (*repair*) ... . 6. I have books and papers all over my desk. I need (*take*) ... some time to straighten up my desk. It needs (*straighten*) ... up. 7. The apples on the tree are ripe. They need (*pick*) ... . 8. The dog needs (*wash*) ... . He's been digging in the mud.

**Ex. 195. Passive Infinitives. Choose the correct answer.**



3. The owner of the building supply store doesn't mind ... his customers discounts when they buy in large quantities.  
A: *giving*                      B: *being given*  
C: *to give*                        D: *to be given*
4. Bart got into trouble when he refused ... his briefcase for the customs officer.  
A: *opening*                        B: *being opened*  
C: *to open*                         D: *to be opened*
5. Olga didn't mention ... about her progress report at work, but I'm sure she is.  
A: *concerning*                    B: *being concerned*  
C: *to concern*                    D: *to be concerned*
6. The City Parks Department is putting in several miles of new trails because so many people have said that they enjoy ... on them.  
A: *walking*                        B: *being walked*  
C: *to walk*                         D: *to be talked*
7. You'd better save some money for a rainy day. You can't count on ... by your parents every time you get into financial difficulty.  
A: *rescuing*                        B: *being rescued*  
C: *to rescue*                        D: *to be rescued*
8. Please forgive me. I didn't mean ... you.  
A: *upsetting*                        B: *being upset*  
C: *to upset*                         D: *to be upset*
9. I don't remember ... of the children to change the company policy on vocations. When was it decided?  
A: *telling*                      B: *being told*                      C: *to tell*                        D: *to be told*
10. Mr. Drake expects ... about any revisions in his manuscript before it is printed.  
A: *consulting*                      B: *being consulted*  
C: *to consult*                      D: *to be consulted*
11. Sam gave such a good speech that I couldn't resist ... loudly when he finished.  
A: *applauding*                      B: *being applauded*  
C: *to applaud*                      D: *to be applauded*
12. Tommy admitted ... the rock through the window.

*A: throwing*                      *B: being thrown*  
*C: to throw*                      *D: to be thrown*

13. If you want to develop inner tranquility, you have to stop ... by every little thing that happens.

*A: bothering*                      *B: being bothered*  
*C: to bother*                      *D: to be bothered*

14. Paul really didn't mind ... by the party to celebrate his fortieth birthday, although he told his friends that they shouldn't have done it.

*A: surprising*                      *B: being surprised*  
*C: to surprise*                      *D: to be surprised*

15. Rita hoped ... to join the private club. She could make important business contacts there.

*A: inviting*                      *B: being invited*  
*C: to invite*                      *D: to be invited*

**Ex. 198. Choose the correct answer: Gerund or Infinitive.**

1. Alice didn't expect ... to Bill's party.

*A: asking*                      *B: being asked*                      *C: to ask*                      *D: to be asked*

2. I finally finished ... at 7:00 P.M. and served dinner.

*A: cooking*                      *B: being cooked*  
*C: to cook*                      *D: to be cooked*

3. Paul always remembers ... in the garage so that the driveway is free for other cars.

*A: parking*                      *B: being parked*                      *C: to park*                      *D: to be parked*

4. The nurse suggested ... two aspirins.

*A: taking*                      *B: being taken*                      *C: to take*                      *D: to be taken*

5. Would you mind not ... the radio until I've finished with the phone call?

*A: turning on*                      *B: being turned on*  
*C: to turn on*                      *D: to be turned on*

6. They were fortunate ... from the fire before the building collapsed.

*A: rescuing*                      *B: to have rescued*  
*C: to rescue*                      *D: to have been rescued*

7. The mouse family avoided ... by coming out only when the house was empty and the two cats were outside.

*A: catching*                      *B: being caught*  
*C: to have been caught*                      *D: to be caught*

8. The baby continued ... even after she was picked up.

A: *being crying*

B: *having cried*

C: *to cry*

D: *having been crying*

9. Arthur pretended not ... hurt when his younger sister bit him.

A: *having*

B: *be*

C: *to have*

D: *to have been*

10. We were shocked to hear the news of your ...

A: *having fired*

B: *having been fired*

C: *to be fired*

D: *to have been fired*

11. Even though she was much younger than the other children, Alexis demanded ... in the game they were playing.

A: *including*

B: *being included*

C: *to include*

D: *to be included*

12. Our mechanic said that he expects ... the brakes on the car before we pick it up.

A: *fixing*

B: *being fixed*

C: *to have fixed*

D: *to have been fixed*

13. Mary's children are used to ... after school every day. They don't have to walk home.

A: *picking up*

B: *being picked up*

C: *be picked up*

D: *pick up*

14. The bus driver was so tired of ... the same route every day that he asked for a transfer.

A: *to drive*

B: *being driven*

C: *driving*

D: *drive*

15. I'm sure it's not my fault that Peter found out what we were planning. I don't remember ... anyone about it.

A: *having told*

B: *being told*

C: *to tell*

D: *to be told*

**Ex. 199. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Choose between Gerund and Infinitive.**

A: Have you made any vacation plans?

B: I was hoping (*go*) ... to an island off the Atlantic coast, but my wife wanted (*drive*) ... down the Pacific coast. We've decided (*commit*) ... by going to neither coast. We've agreed (*find*) ... a place where both of us want (*go*) ...

A: So where are you going?

B: Well, we've been considering (*go*) ... (*fish*) ... in Norway. We've also discussed (*take*) ... a train across Central and Eastern Europe. We've also been talking about (*rent*) ... a sailboat and (*go*)

... (*sail*) ... in the Mediterranean Sea.

A: Have you ever thought about (*stay*) ... home and (*relax*) ...?

B: That's not a vocation to me. If I stay home during my vacation, I always end up doing all the work about the house that I've put off (*do*) ... for the past year. When I go on a holiday, I like (*visit*) ... new places and (*do*) ... new things. I enjoy (*see*) ... parts of the world I've never seen before.

A: What place would you like (*visit*) ... the most?

B: I'd love (*go*) ... (*camp*) ... in New Zealand. My wife loves (*camp*) ... in new places too, but I'm afraid she might refuse (*go*) ... to New Zealand. She doesn't like long plane flights.

A: Why don't you just pick a spot on the map? Then call and make a hotel reservation.

B: Neither of us can stand (*spend*) ... the whole weeks at a hotel somewhere. I don't mean (*say*) ... anything bad about hotels, but both of us seem (*like*) ... more adventurous vacations.

A: Well, keep (*think*) ... about it. I'm sure you'll figure out a really great place for your vacation.

B: We'll have to stop (*think*) ... about it sometime soon and make a decision.

A: I can't wait (*find*) ... out where you decide (*go*) ... I'll expect (*hear*) ... from you when you make a decision. Don't forget (*call*) ... me.

B: Hmmm. Maybe we should go (*ski*) ... in the French Alps. Or perhaps we could go (*water-ski*) ... on the Nile. Then there's the possibility of going (*hike*) ... in the Andes. Of course, we'd probably enjoy (*swim*) ... off the Great Barrier Reef of Australia. And we shouldn't postpone (*explore*) ... the Brazilian rain forest much longer. Someday I'd really (*climb*) ... to the top of an active volcano and (*look*) ... inside the crater. Or maybe we could... .

**Ex. 200. Complete the sentences with *prepositions* and *Gerunds*, using the verbs in brackets. Refer to the list of expressions with prepositions after the exercise if necessary.**

**Model:** I believe *in telling* the truth no matter what. (*tell*)

1. I wish the weather would get better. I'm tired (*have to be*) ... inside all the time. 2. I don't go swimming because I'm afraid (*drown*) ... . 3. Alex is nervous (*meet*) ... his girlfriend's parents for the first time. 4. I don't know how to thank you (*help*) ... me. 5. Are you interested (*go*) ... to a bullfight? 6. I worked on it all night, but

I didn't succeed (*solve*)... the problem. 7. I just can't get excited (*visit*) ... Disneyland for the third time in two years. 8. Ben has the irritating habit (*chew*) ... gum very loudly. 9. Why do you constantly worry (*please*) ... your parents? 10. Ivan! Please concentrate (*read*) ... your assignment. 11. Every summer, I look forward (*take*) ... a vacation with my family. 12. Do you feel (*tell*) ... me why you're so sad? 13. I apologize (*lie*) ... but I was trying to protect you from the truth. Sometimes the truth hurts. 14. Why do you always insist (*pay*) ... for everything when we go out for dinner? 15. I'm in the habit (*jog*) ... every morning, but I'm too tired today. 16. I want you to know that I'm sorry. I don't know if you can ever forgive me (*cause*) ... you so much trouble. 17. I'm not very good (*remember*) ... names. 18. I'm not happy in my work. I often dream (*quit*) ... my job. 19. How do you stop someone (*do*) ... something you know is wrong? 20. You can't convince me to change my mind. After what she did, you'll never talk me (*forgive*) ... her. 21. I'm too tired to cook, but I hadn't planned (*eat*) ... out tonight. 22. Who's responsible (*spill*) ... these coffee beans all over the floor? 23. You'd better be careful. You're in danger (*fail*) ... this class. 24. Polly made a lot of big mistakes at work. That's why she was afraid (*lose*) ... her job.

*a) be afraid of, b) apologize for, c) believe in, d) concentrate on, e) dream about, f) be excited about, g) feel like, h) forgive someone for, i) be good at, j) have the ( bad ) habit of, k) be in danger of, l) be in the habit of, m) insist on, n) be interested in, o) look forward to, p) be nervous about, q) plan on, r) be responsible for, s) stop someone from, t) succeed in, u) talk into doing, v) thank someone for, w) be tired of, x) worry about*

**Ex. 201. Translate into Ukrainian, paying attention to the preposition + Gerund.**

1. They accuse him of having robbed the bank. 2. He never agreed to their going on that dangerous journey. 3. He didn't approve of her drinking so much coffee. 4. The teacher of English didn't approve of his pupils dreaming. 5. All the happiness of my life depends on your loving me. 6. I don't feel like seeing him. 7. I insist on being told the truth. 8. I object to his borrowing money from me. 9. I stretched out my hand to prevent her from falling. 10. My friend succeeded in translating this difficult text. 11. She suspected him of deceiving her. 12. The poor peasant thanked Ro-



bin Hood heartily for having helped him. 13. He gave up the idea of ever hearing from her. 14. We are looking forward to seeing you again. 15. She always complains of feeling unwell. 16. He persisted in trying to solve that difficult problem. 17. The cold weather prevented the girls from going for long walks. 18. Jane thought of leaving London after Miss Black's marriage.

**Ex. 202. Make sentences by combining the ideas from Column A and Column B. Use Gerund Subjects or IT + Infinitive.**

**Model:** Riding a bicycle is easy / dangerous / fun / relaxing.

Or: It is easy / dangerous / fun / relaxing to ride a bicycle.

№	Column A	Column B
1	ride a bicycle	A. against the law
2	read newspapers	B. boring
3	study grammar	C. dangerous
4	play tennis	D. easy
5	steal cars	E. educational
6	listen to a two-hour speech	F. embarrassing
7	predict the exact time of an earthquake	G. exciting
8	forget someone's name	H. frightening
9	walk along through a dark forest at night	I. fun
10	go fishing with your friends	J. hard
11	know the meaning of every word in a dictionary	K. important
12	be honest with yourself at all times	L. impossible
13	change a flat tire	M. relaxing
14	visit museums	N. a waste of time

**Ex. 203. Open the brackets using the necessary Gerund form.**

1. Excuse me for (*break*) ... your beautiful vase. 2. You never mentioned (*to be*) ... in Turkey. 3. He was proud of (*to award*) ... the cup of a champion. 4. I don't remember ever (*to meet*) ... your sister. 5. I don't remember (*to ask*) ... this question by anybody. 6. The cat was punished for (*to eat*) ... the fish. 7. The cat was afraid of (*to punish*) ... and hid itself under the sofa. 8. The machine needs (*to clean*) ... . 9. I am quite serious in (*to say*) ... that I don't want to go abroad. 10. He seems sorry for (*to be*) ... inattentive to his child. 11. He confessed to (*to forget*) ... to send the letter. 12. The old man

couldn't stand (*to tell*) ... what he should do. 13. Going to the party was no use: he had no talent (*to dance*) ... . 14. The St. Sophia Cathedral is worth (*to see*) .... 15. After thoroughly (*to examine*) ... the student, the professor gave him a good mark. 16. After thoroughly (*to examine*) ... by the examination commission, the student was given a good mark. 17. She accused him of (*to steal*) ... her purse. 18. She reproached me for (*not to write*) ... to her. 19. After (*to look*) ... through and (*to mark*) ... the student's papers, the teacher handed them back. 20. The job is not worth (*to take*) ... . 21. After (*to look*) ... through and (*to mark*) ... , the papers were handed back to the students. 22. These clothes want (*to wash*) ... . 23. David was very glad of (*to find*) ... his aunt.

**Ex. 204. Use the Gerund or the Infinitive form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. It's difficult for me (*remember*) ... phone numbers. 2. My cat is good at (*catch*) ... mice. 3. I bought a newspaper (*look*) ... at the ads for apartments for rent. 4. Tourists like (*go*) ... (*swim*) ... in the warm ocean in Hawaii. 5. I called my friends (*invite*) ... them for dinner. 6. Peter talked about (*go*) ... to the party. 7. William found out what was happening by (*listen*) ... carefully to everything that was said. 8. Children, stop (*draw*) ... pictures on the tablecloth! 9. Professor Armando has a strong accent. It is difficult for the students (*understand*) ... him. He needs (*improve*) ... his pronunciation if he wants (*be*) ... a good lecturer. (*lecture*) ... requires good communication skills. 10. Bob's goldfish died when he was away on a trip because his roommate forgot (*feed*) ... them. Bob is considering (*get*) ... a new roommate. 11. My friend Amanda has goldfish in a pond in her garden. She enjoys (*feed*) ... them one by one with chopsticks. 12. Patricia works sixteen hours a day (*earn*) ... enough money (*take*) ... care of her elderly parents as well as her three children. 13. It takes care, patience, and a little luck (*take*) ... a really good photo of wildlife. 14. No matter how wonderful a trip is, it's always good (*get*) ... back home and (*sleep*) ... in one's own bed. 15. It's important to your health for you (*work*) ... at a job you like. If you hate (*go*) ... to your job, you should seriously think about (*look*) ... for a different kind of job. The stress of (*do*) ... work you hate can damage your health.

**Ex. 205. Complete the sentences using the Gerund or the Infinitive.**

1. (*study*) ... English is fun. 2. My boss makes a habit of ( *jot*) ... quick notes to her employees when they've done a good job. ( *jot* = *write quickly and briefly*) 3. From the earth, the sun and the moon appear (*be*) ... almost the same size. 4. A: I don't like airplanes. B: Why? Are you afraid of (*fly*) ...? A: No, I'm afraid of (*crash*) .... 5. People in the modern world are wasteful of natural resources. For example, every three months, people in North America throw away enough aluminum (*build*) ... an entire airplane. 6. I'm so busy! I have just enough time (*do*) ... what I need (*do*) ... , but not enough time (*do*) ... what I'd like (*do*) ... . 7. (*ask*) ... others about themselves and their lives is one of the secrets of (*get*) ... along ... other people. If you want (*make*) ... and (*keep*) ... friends, it is important (*be*) ... sincerely interested in other people's lives. 8. In days of old, it was customary for a servant (*taste*) ... the king's food before the king ate (*make*) ... sure it was not poisoned. 9. One of my old friends, Michael, has the bad habit of (*interrupt*) ... others while they're talking. 10. I like (*travel*) ... to out-of-the-way places. I don't like (*go*) ... to usual tourist places when I'm on holiday. 11. Large bee colonies have 80,000 workers. These worker bees must visit fifty million flowers (*make*) ... one kilogram (2.2 pounds) of honey. It's no wonder that "busy as a bee" is a common expression. 12. Exercise is good for you. Why don't you walk up the stairs instead of (*take*) ... the elevator? 13. Stop (*crack*) ... those nuts with your teeth! Here. Use a nutcracker. Do you want (*be*) ... toothless by the time you're thirty? 14. I keep (*forget*) ... (*call*) ... my friend Annie. I'd better write myself a note.

**Ex. 206. Verb form review. Complete the sentence with the appropriate form of the verb in brackets.**

1. Nick decided (*buy*) ... a new car rather than a used one. 2. I really dislike (*ask*) ... to answer questions in class when I haven't prepared my lesson. 3. I certainly didn't anticipate (*have*) ... to wait in line for three hours for tickets to the soccer game. 4. When I was younger, I used (*wear*) ... mini-skirts and bright colours. Now I am accustomed to (*dress*) ... more conservatively. 5. My children enjoy (*allow*) ... to stay up late when there's something special on TV. 6. Skydivers must have nerves of steel. I can't imagine (*jump*) ...

out of a plane and (*fall*) ... to the earth. What if a parachute didn't open? 7. We are looking forward to (*take*) ... on a tour of London by our British friends. 8. (*Observe*) ... the sun (*climb*) ... above the horizon at dawn makes one (*realize*) ... the earth is indeed turning. 9. I told the mail carrier that we would be away for two weeks on vacation. I asked him (*stop*) ... (*deliver*) ... my mail until the 10<sup>th</sup> of May. He told me (*fill*) ... in a form at the post office so that the post office would hold our mail until I returned. 10. The elderly woman next door is just sitting in her rocking chair (*look*) ... out the window. I wish there were something I could do (*cheer*) ... her up.

**Ex. 207. Complete the sentences with a correct form of the verb in brackets.**

1. I don't understand how he could get the wrong results. When I looked over his notes, his chemistry experiment seemed (*perform*) ... correctly. But something must be wrong somewhere. 2. My mother always makes me (*wash*) ... my hands before each meal. She wouldn't let me (*come*) ... to the dinner table until she has inspected my hands. 3. I resent (*have*) ... to work on this project with Paul. I know I'll end up with most of the work falling on my shoulders. 4. Kate admitted (*surprise*) ... by the unexpected birthday party last Sunday. We had a lot of fun (*plan*) ... it. 5. Carmen moved from a big city to a small town. She appreciate (*be*) ... able to drive to work in five minutes with very little traffic congestion. 6. The power lines outside my house were dangerous. I finally got the power company (*move*) ... them to a safer place. 7. I wanted (*help*) ... them (*resolve*) ... their differences, but Ms. Brown persuaded me (*interfere, not*) .... 8. The witness of the murder asked not (*identify*) ... in the newspaper. He wanted his name kept secret. 9. Pam was encouraged by her teachers (*apply*) ... for study at the Business College. 10. I was happy (*learn*) ... of your new position in the company, but I was disappointed (*discover*) ... that you had recommended (*promote*) ... Roger to your old position instead of me. 11. I don't mind (*remind*) ... you every day (*lock*) ... the door when you leave the apartment, but I would appreciate your (*try*) ... (*remember*) ... on your own. 12. It is generally considered impolite (*chew*) ... noisily at the dinner table. 13. I don't recall (*meet*) ... Mr. Johnson before. I'm sure I haven't. I'd like (*introduce*) ... to him. Would you do the honors? 14. Now I remember your (*ask*) ... me to bring sandwiches to the pic-

nic. Your complaints about my (*forget*) ... things seem justified. I'm sorry. 15. Kelly's boss recommended me for the job. I was pleased (*consider*) ... for the job even though I didn't get it. 16. After the automobile accident, the insurance had a stack of papers for us to sign, but our lawyer advised us (*sign, not*) ... them until he had a chance to study them very carefully. 17. I wasn't tired enough (*sleep*) ... last night. For a long time, I just lay in the bed (*think*) ... about my career and my future. 18. Steve was responsible for (*notify*) ... everyone about the meeting, but he apparently failed (*call*) ... several people. As a result, not enough people showed up and we have to try to get everybody together again soon. 19. Tony smelled something (*burn*) ... When he ran into the kitchen, he saw fire (*come*) ... out of the oven and panicked. If Petra hadn't come running in with the fire extinguisher, I don't know what would have happened.

**Ex. 208. Complete the sentence with the appropriate form of the verb.**

1. After I decided (*have*) ... a garage (*build*) ... next to the house, I hired a carpenter (*do*) ... the work. 2. The coach didn't let anyone (*watch*) ... the team (*practice*) ... before the championship game. He wanted to keep the opposing team from (*find*) ... out about the new plays he had devised. 3. Jane applied to a medical school many months ago. Now she's so concerned about (*accept*) ... into medical school that she's having a difficult time (*concentrate*) ... on the courses she's taking this term. 4. My son is playing in his first piano recital this evening. I'm looking forward to (*hear*) ... him (*play*) ..., but I know he is worried about (*forget*) ... the right notes and (*make*) ... a fool of himself. I told him just (*relax*) ... and (*enjoy*) ... himself. 5. It may be impossible (*persuade*) ... my mother (*give*) ... up her job even though she's having health problems. We can't even get her (*cut*) ... down on her working hours. She enjoys (*work*) ... so much that she refuses (*retire*) ... and (*take*) ... it easy. I admire her for (*dedicate*) ... to her work, but I also want her to take care of her health. 6. There's not much point in (*waste*) ... a lot of time and energy on the project. It's likely (*fail*) ... no matter what we do. Spend your time (*do*) ... something more worthwhile. 7. Traffic has become too heavy for the Johnsons (*commute*) ... easily to their jobs in the city. They're considering (*move*) ... to an apartment close to their places of work. They don't want (*give*) ... up their present

home in the suburbs, but they need (*live*) ... in the city and be closer to their work so they can spend more time (*do*) ... the things they really enjoy (*do*) ... in their free time. 8. Last week my wife was ill with flu. It made her feel awful. She didn't have enough energy (*get*) ... out of bed. She just lay there (*feel*) ... sorry for herself. When her mother heard her (*sneeze*) ... and (*cough*) ..., she opened her bedroom door (*ask*) ... her if she needed anything. She was really happy (*see*) ..., her kind and caring face, but there wasn't anything she could do to make the flu (*go*) ... away. 9. Fish don't use their teeth for (*chew*) ... . They use their teeth for (*grab*) ... (*hold*) ... or (*tear*) ... . Most fish (*swallow*) ... their prey whole. 10. (*attend*) ... the dance proved to be an (*embarrass*) ... experience for my brother, especially since he doesn't know how to dance. He felt like a fish out of water. He wanted (*hide*) ... somewhere or (*get*) ... out of there, but his girlfriend wouldn't let him (*leave*) ... . 11. My granny is sixty now, but she enjoy (*recall*) ... her schooldays. She remembers (*choose*) ... by her classmates as "Most Likely to Succeed" when she was a senior. Her best friend was chosen as "Least Likely to Succeed," and he is now the president of an electronic company. Once in a while when they get together, they have a good time (*look*) ... through the school yearbook and (*laugh*) ... at the way they looked then. They reminisce about (*act*) ... in school dramas and (*play*) ... on the soccer team. They remember (*be*) ... serious young people who knew how to have fun. They congratulate themselves for (*achieve*) ... more than they had thought they could when they were seventeen.

**Ex. 209. Proceed with the task of the previous exercise.**

1. I can't seem (*get*) ... rid of the cockroaches in my apartment. I see them (*run*) ... all over my kitchen counters every night. It drives me crazy. I'm considering (*have*) ... the whole apartment (*spray*) ... by a professional pest control expert.

2. The employees were happy when the new management took over. They weren't accustomed to (*treat*) ... disrespectfully by the managers of the production departments. By (*threaten*) ... (*stop*) ... (*work*) ..., they got the company (*listen*) ... to their grievances. In the end, a strike was averted.

3. Our apartment needs (*clean*) ... . The doors need (*sweep*) .... The dishes need (*wash*) .... The furniture needs (*dust*) .... However, I think I'll read a book. (*Read*) ... is a lot more interesting than (*do*) ... housework.

4. According to some estimates, well over half of the world's population is functionally illiterate. Imagine **(be)** ... a parent with a sick child and **(be)** ... unable to read the directions on the medicine bottle. We all know that it is important for medical directions **(understand)** ... clearly. Many medical professionals are working today **(bridge)** ... the literacy gap by **(teach)** ... health care through pictures.

5. As an adult, I very much appreciate **(give)** ... the opportunity to travel extensively with my parents when I was a child. Those experiences were important in **(form)** ... my view of the world. I learned **(accept)** ... different customs and beliefs. At times, I would resist **(go)** ... away on another trip, especially when I was a teenager. In the end, I always accompanied my parents, and I am grateful that I did. I didn't understand at that time how those trips would influence my later life. My **(be)** ... a compassionate and caring adult is due in large part to my **(expose)** ... to many different ways of life as a child.

6. **(Find)** ... a cure for the common cold does not appear **(be)** ... imminent. Colds are caused by hundreds of different viruses. You can possibly avoid **(expose)** ... to the viruses by **(stay)** ... away from those with colds, but it's almost impossible **(avoid)** ... the viruses completely. If you want **(minimize)** ... the risk of **(get)** ... a cold, it is prudent **(get)** ... enough rest and **(eat)** ... properly. Some people believe in **(take)** ... large amounts of Vitamin C. In the long run, it is probably easier **(prevent)** ... **(catch)** ... a cold than it is to cure one.

7. Modern cars have systems that protect us from **(inconvenience)** ... or **(hurt)** ... by our own carelessness. In most cars, when the keys are left in the ignition, a buzz sounds in order **(remind)** ... the driver **(remove)** ... them. In some models, if the driver doesn't remember **(turn)** ... off the lights, it doesn't matter because the lights go off automatically. In some cases, when the seat belts are not buckled, the ignition does not start and then the driver is actually forced **(buckle)** ... up. Often when the driver has failed **(shut)** ... a door properly, another signal noise may be given. A few cars emit sounds to warn us **(fill)** ... the tank before it is completely empty.

8. It is easy **(forget)** ... **(do)** ... many routine tasks in **(drive)** ... a car. The automatic warning systems help drivers **(avoid)** ... **(make)** ... some common mistakes. While some people may resent **(instruct)** ... by their own automobiles **(perform)** ... certain procedures, many

others do not mind at all (**remind**) ... (**carry**) ... out these easily overlooked procedures.

**Ex. 210. Gerunds or Infinitives. Choose the correct answer.**

1. The office staff decided ... a retirement party for Mrs. Smith.  
A. *having had*    B. *to have had*    C. *to have*    D. *having*
2. I don't blame you for not ... outside in this awful weather.  
A. *wanting to go*    B. *wanting go*  
C. *want to go*    D. *to want go*
3. I think I hear someone ... the back window. Do you hear it, too?  
A. *trying to open*    B. *trying open*  
C. *try opening*    D. *try to open*
4. When James was questioned by the police, he admitted knowing about the embezzlement of funds from his company, but denied ... in any way.  
A. *to be involved*    B. *involving*  
C. *having involved*    D. *being involved*
5. Mr. Rammers was upset by ... him the truth.  
A. *our not having told*    B. *us not tell*  
C. *we didn't tell*    D. *not to tell*
6. We considered ... after work.  
A. *to go shop*    B. *going shopping*  
C. *going to shop*    D. *to go to shop*
7. Alison offered ... care of my garden while I was out of town.  
A. *take*    B. *taking*    C. *to have taken*    D. *to take*
8. Could you please come over? I need you ... the refrigerator.  
A. *help me moving*    B. *helping me to move*  
C. *to help me move*    D. *help me to move*
9. I just heard that there's been a major accident that all of the traffic tied up. If we want to get to the play on time, we'd better avoid ... the highway.  
A. *having taken*    B. *take*    C. *to take*    D. *taking*
10. The painting was beautiful. I stood there ... it for a long time.  
A. *for admiring*    B. *being admired*  
C. *admire*    D. *admiring*
11. Lionel should have asked for help instead ... to do it himself.  
A. *of trying*    B. *to try*    C. *try*    D. *from trying*



12. A plane with an engine on fire approached the runway. ... was frightening. There could have been a terrible accident.  
*A. Watch it landing      B. Watching it land*  
*C. To watch it land      D. Watching to land it*
13. The customs officer opened the suitcase ... if anything illegal was being brought into the country.  
*A. seeing      B. for seeing      C. see      D. to see*
14. Sometimes very young children have trouble ... fact from fiction and may believe that dragons actually exist.  
*A. to separate      B. separating*  
*C. to be separated      D. for separating*
15. Do you have an excuse ... late to class two days in a row?  
*A. for to be      B. for being      C. to be      D. being*
16. Sam made me ... him next week.  
*A. to promise to call      B. to promise calling*  
*C. promise to call      D. promise calling*
17. I'll never forget ... that race. What a thrill!  
*A. to win      B. win      C. win      D. winning*
18. No one has better qualifications. Carol is certain ... for the job.  
*A. to choose      B. having chosen*  
*C. to be chosen      D. being chosen*
19. I was enjoying my book, but I stopped ... a program on TV.  
*A. reading to watch      B. to read to watch*  
*C. to read for watching      D. reading for to watch*
20. Who is the woman talking to Mr. Mercury? I don't recall ... her around the office before.  
*A. to have seen      B. seeing      C. to see      D. being seen*

**Ex. 211. Choose the correct answer using Gerunds or Infinitives.**

1. Michael proved that the accident wasn't his fault by ... two witnesses who testified in his favor.  
*A. produce      B. produced      C. to produce      D. producing*
2. The front door is warped from the humidity. We have a difficult time ... it.  
*A. open      B. to open      C. having opened      D. opening*
3. I stood up at the meeting and demanded .... At last, I got the chance to express my opinion.

- A. *to be heard*                      B. *to hear*  
 C. *to have heard*                    D. *having heard*
4. Did you ever finish ... the office for that new client of yours?  
 A. *to design*                            B. *designing*  
 C. *designed*                            D. *having designed*
5. It's a beautiful day, and I have my brother's boat. Would you like to go ... ?  
 A. *to sail*                      B. *sailing*                      C. *to sailing*                      D. *for sailing*
6. I called a plumber ... the kitchen sink.  
 A. *for repairing*                      B. *for to repair*  
 C. *to repair*                            D. *to be repaired*
7. I'm angry because you didn't tell me the truth. I don't like ... .  
 A. *deceiving*                            B. *to deceive*  
 C. *being deceived*                    D. *having deceived*
8. A good teacher makes his students ... the world from new perspectives.  
 A. *to view*                      B. *viewing*                      C. *view*                            D. *to be viewed*
9. Please remember ... your hand during the test if you have a question.  
 A. *raising*                            B. *to raise*  
 C. *having raised*                      D. *to have raised*
10. It is important ... care of your health.  
 A. *to take*                      B. *to be taken*                      C. *take*                            D. *taken*
11. ... in restaurants as often as they do is very expensive.  
 A. *Being eaten*                      B. *Having eaten*  
 C. *Having been eating*              D. *Eating*
12. I expect Susan ... here early tonight. She should arrive in the next half hour.  
 A. *to come*                      B. *coming*                      C. *having come*                      D. *to have come*
13. I advised my niece not ... at an early age.  
 A. *marrying*                      B. *to marry*  
 C. *being married*                      D. *to have been married*
14. Shhh. I hear someone ... in the distance. Do you hear it, too ?  
 A. *shout*                            B. *shouted*                      C. *to shout*                      D. *shouting*
15. I don't understand ... your job so suddenly. Why did you do that?  
 A. *your quitting*                      B. *you to have quit*  
 C. *to quit*                            D. *you quit*

16. Last night, we saw a meteor ... through the sky.  
A. *streaked*                      B. *to streak*  
C. *streak*                          D. *to have streaked*
17. My parents wouldn't let me ... up late when I was a child.  
A. *to be stay*    B. *staying*    C. *to stay*    D. *stay*
18. Children should be encouraged ... their individual interests.  
A. *develop*                          B. *to be developed*  
C. *to develop*                      D. *developing*
19. This room is too dark. We need ... a lighter shade.  
A. *to have it painted*              B. *to be painted*  
C. *painting it*                      D. *to have it paint*
20. I'm sorry I never graduated. I've always regretted not ... college.  
A. *to finish*                          B. *finish*  
C. *finished*                          D. *having finished*

MAY 11

---

---

## PASSIVE VOICE

---

---

### Ex. 212. Put the verbs in brackets into The Passive Voice.

1. The printing press (*invent*) ... in the fifteenth century. 2. Gold (*mine*) ... in mines. 3. Last night we (*invite*) ... to the restaurant by our friends from Spain. 4. Italy and France (*visit*) ... by millions of tourists every year. 5. Russia (*invade*) ... by Napoleon. 6. The menu in our bar (*change*) ... every week. 7. Nowadays oil (*transport*) ... in large ships. 8. These raspberries are fresh; they (*pick*) ... in the morning. 9. Today rugby football (*play*) ... in many countries. 10. Many people (*kill*) ... in road accidents every year. 11. The United Nations Organization (*found*) ... in 1945. 12. This type of TV sets (*produce*) ... in Japan. 13. Far more money (*spend*) ... on food now than ten years ago. 14. The results of the examination (*not know*) ... for two months.

### Ex. 213. Use the Passive form of the following verbs in brackets.

1. In 1666, a large part of London (*destroy*) ... by fire. 2. The fire of London, as it (*call*) ... in the history books, (*commemorate*) ... by a monument which (*build*) ... near where the fire started. 3. Last Friday one of our teams (*send*) ... off the field for rough play. 4. Very much research (*do*) ... to prevent our rivers and lakes from being polluted. 5. He had already read the book that (*give*) ... to him on his retirement. 6. The little girl (*save*) ... from being run over because she (*pull*) ... away in time by a policeman. 7. When I returned I found that my car (*tow*) ... away. I (*tell*) ... it was because it (*park*) ... under a No-Parking sign. 8. Nothing (*hear*) ... of him since he left the country six weeks ago. 9. The man who (*bite*) ... by a snake was given a serum. 10. Three hundred new houses (*build*) ... by the end of the next year.

### Ex. 214. Rewrite the following sentences in the Passive.

1. They punished this man for something he hadn't done. 2. Everyone knows this piece of music quite well. 3. Did the government

take any important measures in the past few weeks? 4. Do they perform this play regularly? 5. I don't think anyone can help me. 6. The soldiers kept the man prisoner. 7. What should people do in these circumstances? 8. They built this tunnel two years ago. 9. He must finish his work before eight o'clock. 10. His friends will never forget him. 11. No one could possibly have recognized him. 12. The news didn't surprise us, so it didn't frighten us. 13. Somebody has stolen my car. 14. Somebody has left the light on all night. 15. Nobody has ever found the secret. 16. A customs officer will show you a lot of articles on which you have to pay duty and he will ask you if you have anything to declare. Remember: Honesty is the best policy! If the customs officer finds something that you should have declared, things will be unpleasant for you. 17. Today we take it for granted that the universities give women the same opportunities for study as men. Yet public opinion was against women students as late as 1870. The authorities were especially against women who wished to study medicine. They told them their studies were incompatible with modesty. They denied women students the scholarships they were entitled to.

**Ex. 215. Put the following sentences into the Passive.**

**Pay attention to the modal verbs.**

1. You must do three of these exercises tomorrow. 2. You can find the book you need in the library. 3. We must send these letters at once. 4. You must take the box to the station. 5. You can cross the river on the raft. 6. The workers can finish the building of the house very soon. 7. You must return the books the day after tomorrow. 8. I can easily forgive this mistake. 9. You can find such berries everywhere. 10. You must do this work very carefully. 11. The doctor says they must take her to hospital. 12. You can do the work in three days. 13. The students must return all the library books before each vacation. 14. Monkeys can climb even the tallest trees.

**Ex. 216. Open the brackets using verbs in the Passive.**

1. At the last competition the first prize (*to win*) ... by our team. 2. The question (*to settle*) ... as soon as they arrived. 3. Your report must (*to divide*) ... into two chapters. 4. Soon he (*to send*) ... to a sanatorium. 5. The book (*to discuss*) ... at the next conference. 6. The composition must (*to hand*) ... in next Wednesday. 7. Last Saturday

I (*to tell*) ... to prepare a speech. 8. The article (*to publish*) ... last week, if I am not mistaken. 9. The lectures (*to attend*) ... by all of us. 10. A taxi (*to call*) ... fifteen minutes ago, so we are expecting it any moment. 11. The young man (*to introduce*) ... me only a couple of hours ago, but it seems to me that I've known him for ages. 12. The rule explained by the teacher at the last lesson (*to understand*) ... by all the students. 13. The poem was so beautiful that it (*to learn*) ... by everybody. 14. I hope the invitation (*to accept*) ... by everybody. 15. The letter (*to post*) ... in half an hour only. 16. It seems to me that music (*to hear*) ... from the next room.

**Ex. 217. Use the verbs in brackets in Active or Passive Voice.**

1. Nobody (*to see*) ... him yesterday. 2. The telegram (*to receive*) ... tomorrow. 3. He (*to give*) ... me this book next week. 4. The answer to this question can (*to find*) ... in the encyclopedia. 5. We (*to show*) ... the historical monuments of the capital to the delegation. 6. You can (*to find*) ... interesting information about the life in the USA in this book. 7. Budapest (*to divide*) ... into two parts by the Danube river: Buda and Pest. 8. Prince Yaroslav the Wise (*to built*) ... the St. Sophia Cathedral in Kiev.

**Ex. 218. Transform the following sentences using Passive Voice.**

1. We turn on the light when it is dark. 2. The students finished their translation in time. 3. Katty washed the dishes. 4. Betty often took her younger sister for a walk. 5. Mother has made some coffee. 6. Have you ironed your shirt yet? 7. Peter mispronounced this word. 8. He has told us the truth. 9. They promised us an interesting entertainment. 10. People use chalk for writing on the blackboard. 11. I shall finish my work by the evening. 12. Somebody has opened the door. 13. The waitress brought in the coffee. 14. One of my friends took me to the cinema last week. 15. We shall finish the work in time. 16. They built this house in 1990. 17. They were selling new children's books in that shop when I entered it yesterday. 18. A large group of young people joined us on our way to the station. 19. A young teacher started a school in this village. 20. They are translating this article now. 21. Galsworthy wrote "The Forsythe Saga." 22. He has just interrupted me. 23. The teacher has explained it to us.

**Ex. 219.** Use the words in the following list to complete the sentences. All of the sentences are passive. Use any appropriate tense:

*build, cause, confuse, divide, expect, frighten, invent, kill, offer, order, report, spell, surprise, surround, wear*

1. The electric light bulb ... by Thomas Edison. 2. An island ... by water. 3. The *-ing* form of “sit” ... with a double *t*. 4. Even though construction costs are high, a new dormitory ... next year. 5. The class was too large, so it ... into two sections. 6. A bracelet ... around the wrist. 7. The Johnson’s house burned down. According to the inspector, the fire ... by lightning. 8. Pete got a ticket for reckless driving. When he went to traffic court, he ... to pay a fine of \$100. 9. I read about a hunter who ... by a wild animal. 10. The hunter’s fatal accident ... in the newspaper yesterday. 11. I didn’t expect Lisa to come to the meeting last night, but she was there. I ... to see her there. 12. Last week I ... a job at a local bank, but I didn’t accept. 13. The children ... in the middle of the night when they heard strange noises in the house. 14. Could you try to explain this math problem to me again? Yesterday in class I ... by the teacher’s explanation. 15. A: Is the plane going to be late? B: No. It ... to be on time.

**Ex. 220.** Use active or passive, in any appropriate tense, for the verbs in brackets.

1. The Amazon valley is extremely important to the ecology of the earth. Forty percent of the world’s oxygen (*produce*) ... there.

2. The game (*win, probably*) ... by the other team tomorrow. They’re a lot better than we are.

3. There was a terrible accident on a busy downtown street yesterday. Dozens of people (*see*) ... it, including my friend, who (*interview*) ... by the police.

4. In my country, certain prices (*control*) ... by the government, such as the prices of medical supplies. However, other prices (*determine*) ... by how much people are willing to pay for a product.

5. Yesterday the wind (*blow*) ... my hat off my head. I had to chase it down the street. I (*want, not*) ... to lose it because it’s my favorite hat and it (*cost*) ... a lot.

6. Right now Alex is in the hospital. He (*treat*) ... for a bad turn on his hand and arm.

7. Yesterday a purse-snatcher (**catch**) ... by a dog. While the thief (**chase**) ... by the police, he (**jump**) ... over a fence into someone's yard, where he encountered a ferocious dog. The dog (**keep**) ... the thief from escaping.

8. Frostbite may occur when the skin (**expose**) ... to extreme cold. It most frequently (**affect**) ... the skin of the cheeks, chin, ears, fingers, nose, and toes.

9. The first fish (**appear**) ... on the earth about 500 million years ago. Up to now, over 20,000 kinds of fish (**name**) ... and (**describe**) ... by scientists. New species (**discover**) ... every year, so the total increases continually.

10. Proper first aid can save a victim's life, especially if the victim is bleeding heavily, has stopped breathing, or (**poison**) ...

11. The government used to support the school. Today it (**support**) ... by private funds as well as by the tuition the students pay.

12. Richard Anderson is a former astronaut. Several years ago, at age 52, Anderson (**inform**) ... by his superior at the aircraft corporation that he could no longer be a test pilot. He (**tell**) ... that he was being relieved of his duties because of his age. Claiming age discrimination, he took the corporation to court.

13. In the early 80's, photographs of Mars (**send**) ... back to earth by unmanned space probes. From these photographs scientists have been able to make detailed maps of the surface of Mars.

14. A network of lines (**discover**) ... on Mars's surface by an Italian astronomer around the turn of the century. The astronomer (**call**) ... these lines "channels", but when the Italian word (**translate**) ... into English, it became "canals." As a result, some people thought the lines were waterways that (**build**) ... by some unknown living creatures. We now know that the lines are not really canals. Canals (**exist, not**) ... on Mars.

## The passive form of modals and similar expressions.

**The passive form:** *modal + be + Past Participle*  
*will + be invited, can't + be opened, should + be taught,*  
*ought to + be sent*

**The past passive form:** *modal + have been + Past Participle*  
*should + have been sent, must + have been built*



**Ex. 221. Complete the sentences with the given words, active or passive.**

1. James (*should + tell*) ... the news as soon as possible. 2. Someone (*should + tell*) ... James the news immediately. 3. James (*should + tell*) ... the news a long time ago. 4. Meat ... in a refrigerator or it will spoil. (*must + keep*) 5. You (*must + keep*)... meat in a refrigerator or it will spoil. 6. We tried, but the window (*couldn't + open*) ... It was painted shut. 7. I tried, but I (*couldn't + open*) ... the window. 8. Good news! I (*may + offer*) ... a job soon. I had an interview at an engineering firm yesterday. 9. John had good news. The engineering firm where he had an interview yesterday (*may + offer*) ... him a job soon. 10. I hope John accepts our job offer, but I know he's been having interviews with several companies. He (*may + already + offer*) ... a job by a competing firm before we made our offer. 11. The class for next semester is too large. It (*ought to + divide*) ... in half, but there's not enough money in the budget to hire another teacher. 12. Last semester's class was too large. It (*ought to + divide*) ... in half. 13. The books ... to the library by tomorrow. (*have to + return*) 14. This application (*be supposed to + send*) ... to the personnel department soon. 15. Ann's birthday was on the 10<sup>th</sup>, and now it's already the 15<sup>th</sup>. Her birthday card (*should + send*) ... a week ago. Maybe we'd better give her a call to wish her a belated happy birthday. 16. A: Ann didn't expect to see her boss at the labour union meeting. B: She (*must + be*) ... surprised when she saw him. A: She was.

**Ex. 222. Use the verb in brackets with any appropriate modal or similar expression. All of the sentences are passive. In many sentences more than one modal verb is possible. Use the modal that sounds best to you.**

1. The entire valley (*see*) ... from their mountain home. 2. He is wearing a gold band on his fourth finger. He (*marry*) .... 3. According to our teacher, all of our compositions (*write*) ... in ink. He won't accept papers written in pencil. 4. I found this book on my desk when I came to class. It (*leave*) ... by one of the students in the earlier class. 5. Five of the committee members will be unable to attend the next meeting. In my opinion, the meeting (*postpone*) .... 6. A child (*give, not*) ... everything he or she wants. 7. Your daughter has a good voice. Her interest in singing (*encourage*) ... 8. Try

to speak slowly when you give your speech. If you don't, some of your words (*misunderstand*) ... . 9. Some UFO sightings (*explain, not*) ... easily. No one is able to explain them easily. 10. What? You tripped over a chair at the party and dropped your plate of food into a woman's lap? You (*embarrass*) ...! 11. She is very lazy. If you want her to do anything, she (*push*) .... 12. The hospital in that small town is very old and can no longer serve the needs of the community. A new hospital (*build*) ... years ago. 13. We cannot wait any longer! Something (*do*) ... immediately! 14. In my opinion, she (*elect*) ... because she is honest, knowledgeable, and competent.

**Ex. 223. Use an appropriate form of the words in the following list to complete the sentences:**

*bear (born), block, confuse, crowd, divorce, do, exhaust, go, insure, locate, lose, marry, plug in, qualify, schedule, spoil, stick, turn off*

1. Excuse me, sir. Could you give me some directions? I ... .  
2. Let's find another restaurant. This one ... too ... . We would have to wait at least an hour for a table. 3. The meeting ... for tomorrow at nine. 4. That's hard work! I ... I need to rest for a while. 5. You told me one thing and Pete told me another. I don't know what to think. I ... . 6. Laura is probably sleeping. The lights in her room ... . 7. Caroline and Bob were married to each other for five years, but now they ... . 8. I thought I had left my book on this desk, but it isn't here. It ... . I wonder where it is. 9. I'm sorry. You ... not ... for the job. We need someone with a degree in electrical engineering. 10. I can't open the window. It ... . 11. Mrs. Carruthers's jewellery ... for \$50,000. 12. I love my wife. I ... to a wonderful woman. 13. We can't eat this fruit. It ... We'll have to throw it away. 14. We'd better call a plumber. The water won't go down the drain. The drain ... . 15. Thailand ... in Southeast Asia. 16. A: How old is Jack? B: He ... in 1980. 17. A: The TV set doesn't work. B: Are you sure? ... it ...? 18. A: Is dinner ready? B: Not yet. The potatoes ... not .... They need another ten minutes.

**Ex. 224. The Passive with *get*.**

**Complete the sentences by an appropriate form of *get* and the given verbs.**

*Model:* 1. (*tire*) ... I think I'll stop working. I *am getting tired*.

1. There was an accident, but nobody (*hurt*) ... . 2. We didn't have a map, so we (*lose*) ... . 3. We can leave as soon as you (*dress*) ... . 4. When ... you (*marry*) ...? 5. How long did it take you to (*accustom*) ... to living here? 6. (*worry*) ... Roy was supposed to be at home an hour ago, but he still isn't here. I ... . 7. Just try to take it easy. Don't (*upset*) ... . 8. I (*confuse*) ... because everybody gave me different advice. 9. We can leave as soon as I (*do*) ... with my work. 10. Joan (*depress*) ... when she lost her job, so I tried to cheer her up. 11. (*invite*) ... you ... to the party? 12. I (*bore*) ... , so I didn't stay for the end of the movie. 13. I'll be ready to leave as soon as I (*pack*) ... . 14. I (pay) ... on Fridays. I'll give you the money I owe you next Friday. Okay? 15. After Sam graduated, he (*hire*) ... by an engineering firm. 16. But later he (*fire*) ... because he didn't do his work. 17. Last night I (*finish, not*) ... with my homework until after midnight. 18. I (*disgust*) ... and left because the things they were saying at the meeting were ridiculous. 19. First, they (*engage*) ... . Then, they (*marry*) ... Later, they (*divorce*) ... . Finally, they (*re-marry*) ... . Today they are very happy.

**Ex. 225. Use active or passive in any appropriate tense, for the verbs in brackets.**

1. It's noon. The mail should be here soon. It (*deliver, usually*) ... sometime between noon and one o'clock. 2. Only five of us (*work*) ... in the laboratory yesterday when the explosion (*occur*) ... Luckily, no one (*hurt*) ... . 3. I was supposed to take a test yesterday, but I (*admit, not*) ... into the testing room because the examination (*begin, already*) ... . 4. According to a recent survey, out of every dollar an American spends on food, thirty-six cents (*spend*) ... at restaurants. 5. I'm sorry I'm late. I (*hold up*) ... by the rush hour traffic. It (*take*) ... thirty minutes for me to get here instead of fifteen. 6. Before she graduated last May, Susan (*offer, already*) ... a position with a law firm. 7. According to many scientists, solar energy (*use*) ... extensively in the twenty-first century. 8. I (*study*) ... English here for the last two months. My English (*get*) ... better, but I still find it difficult to understand lectures. 9. Right now a

student trip to the planetarium (*organize*) ... by Mrs. Hunt. You can sign up for it at her office. 10. He is a man whose name will go down in history. He (*forget, never*) ... . 11. When you (*arrive*) ... at the airport tomorrow, you (*meet*) ... by a friend of mine. He (*wear*) ... a red shirt and blue jeans . He (*be*) ... fairly tall and (*have*) ... dark hair. He (*stand*) ... near the main entrance. I'm sure you will be able to find him. 12. A: Yesterday (*be*) ... a terrible day. B: What (*happen*) ...? A: First, I (*flunk*) ... a test, or at least I think I did. Then I (*drop*) ... my books while I (*walk*) ... across campus and they (*fall*) ... into a mud puddle. And finally, my bicycle (*steal*) ... . B: You should have stayed in bed.

**Ex. 226. Put the following sentences into Passive Voice.**

**Model:** They laughed at him. *He was laughed at.*

1. People speak much of him. 2. They will look after the children well. 3. People will laugh at you if you say it. 4. They sent for the doctor immediately. 5. Everybody listened to her attentively. 6. They always wait for me after the lessons. 7. Nobody took notice of this little boy. 8. Everybody lost sight of the boat in the fog. 9. Why are they laughing at her? 10. I wonder whether they will listen to him. 11. Students often refer to these books. 12. Nobody has ever spoken to me in such a way. 13. If they sent for you don't refuse to come. 14. They have not referred to that incident since then.

**Ex. 227. Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Passive Voice.**

1. I'm not wearing my black shoes today. They (*mend*) ... . 2. This copy (*not read*) ... . The pages (*not cut*) ... . 3. Why the car (*not locked*) ... or (*put*) ... into the garage? 4. The damaged ship (*tow*) ... into the harbor when the towline broke. 5. This room (*use*) ... only on special occasions. 6. Bicycles must not (*leave*) ... in the hall. 7. He was taken to hospital this afternoon, and (*operate on*) ... tomorrow morning. 8. It was a lonely road, and the girl was afraid; she thought she (*follow*) ... . 9. The paintings (*exhibit*) ... till the end of the month. 10. The little girl is an only child, and she (*spoil*) ... by her parents and grandparents. 11. Normally this street (*sweep*) ... every day, but it (*not sweep*) ... yesterday. 12. It was very cold yesterday afternoon, but we couldn't light a fire in the sitting room: the chimney (*sweep*) ... . 13. This purse (*to leave*) ... in a classroom

yesterday, it (*find*) ... by the cleaner. 14. Thousands of new houses (*build*) ... every year. 15. When I saw the car, it (*drive*) ... at over fifty miles an hour. 16. This room (*not use*) ... for ages. 17. The children are very excited this morning. They (*take*) ... to the circus this afternoon. 18. My keys (*return*) ... to me, they (*pick up*) ... in the street. 19. Dogs must (*keep*) ... on leads in the gardens. 20. Dictionaries may not (*use*) ... at the examination.

**Ex. 228. Change the sentences from Active into Passive Voice.**

1. We heat the house by gas. 2. They are pulling down a lot of houses in this street. 3. People may keep books from the library for a fortnight. After that they must return them. 4. Someone has already told him about this tour. 5. Everybody expected him to pass his exams well. 6. They have lengthened the runway in this airport. 7. We shall throw out the mushrooms if they are poisonous. 8. One cannot do it so quickly. 9. Nobody had warned me of the danger before the accident happened. 10. They will take him to hospital tomorrow. 11. If they laugh at you, don't get offended. 12. Why weren't you at the party? – They didn't invite me. 13. The girl was angry as her mother hasn't allowed her to go out with her boyfriend. 14. No one has ever climbed this mountain. 15. Switch on the TV, they are broadcasting a very interesting film. 16. Last night we saw her with Jeffry. 17. When will they send for him? 18. Has anything frightened you? 19. One must pay attention to this fact. 20. Why did they laugh at him when he began speaking of his adventures?

**Ex. 229. Express in the Passive the second of each of the following sentences. Do not mention the active subjects. The model is given below.**

*Model: 1. He seldom keeps a promise. No one can rely on him. He can't be relied on. 2. He's very sensitive. He doesn't like people to laugh at him. He doesn't like to be laughed at.*

1. The child is very ill. Someone must send for the doctor. 2. This old car is in excellent condition. The owner has looked after it very well. 3. He spoke for two hours. The people listened to him in complete silence. 4. She is going to hospital tomorrow. The doctors and nurses will take good care of her. 5. This little boy is always dirty. No one looks after him properly. 6. She is always breaking things in

the kitchen. Someone must speak to her about her carelessness. 7. He's a sensible man. People listen to his advice carefully. 8. The dentist said her teeth were very bad. No one had taken care of them. 9. He never broke a promise in his life. People could always rely on him. 10. Shakespeare was born more than 400 years ago. People look upon him as the greatest of English poets. 11. The little boy's mother is in hospital. The boy's aunt is looking after him.

**Ex. 230. Translate into Ukrainian paying special attention to the Passive Voice.**

1. He was shown at once into the lounge. 2. For that he can be sent to prison. 3. Your husband is well thought of, which is very important. 4. Were you quite sure she had never been seen there before? 5. There are two things that must be connected. 6. The handwriting has been identified as hers. 7. The papers were set fire to in order to get rid of the evidence. 8. She found the room exactly as it had been left the night before. 9. He was still there, though all he had to tell had already been heard. 10. Her bed had not been slept in. 11. His tie was very badly arranged. 12. When on earth will the telegram be sent off? 13. She is not seen with Tom any longer. 14. It is not allowed to smoke here.

**Ex. 231. Revision of Active and Passive Voices. Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate tense.**

1. James (*sit*) ... in the exam room with a worried look on his face. He couldn't remember an important date – “is it 1767, 1783, or 1794?” He thought to himself. 2. “We (*do*) ... it in class only last month, and I (*read*) ... my history notes twice since then. What a waste of time this all is!” 3. I (*sit*) ... here for about two hours writing about the past. What difference does it make whether it's 1767, 1783, or 1794? 4. I (*not play*) ... tennis for five days. Just think, I (*read*) ... books for five whole days. What a waste of time! I don't know how Kate does it. 5. She (*study*) ... for this exam for the last three months.” 6. He looked across at Claude, who (*sit*) ... on his right. 7. Claude (*write*) ... confidently and James suddenly (*feel*) ... even more worried. 7. He (*look*) ... at his watch; it was 10:59. 8. “I (*sit*) ... here for ten minutes trying to remember that date, and in that time I (*not write*) ... a thing. 9. At this rate I won't even finish

all the questions.” He left a space for the date and finished the answer. 10. Then he (**look**) ... at the next question. “Write about the importance of Versailles,” he repeated to himself. 11. “How can I? I (**never hear**) ... of him.” Suddenly the voice of the invigilator rang out: “It is now eleven o’clock.” 12. “You (**write**) ... for two hours, and you have one hour left.” 13. “I wonder how Kate (**get on**) ...,” thought James. He looked across to where Kate (**be**) ... . 14. Kate just (**get up**) ... with a satisfied look on her face. 15. He (**watch**) ... Kate leave the room and then looked at the next question. 16. “Ah, that’s better. I know the answer to that one – I (**learn**) ... it by heart two days ago, thank goodness.” 17. My answer will be as good as Kate’s. In my opinion she (**work**) ... too hard lately; a game of tennis will do her good. 18. Ah, I just (**remember**) ... that date, it was in 1783. This exam is dead easy. Although I can’t answer one question I’ll still pass. 19. “Thank goodness I (**not start**) ... studying for it until three days ago!”

**Ex. 232. Use Active or Passive Voice in the following sentences.**

1. Some of the oldest structures in the world today (**be**) ... pyramids, which (**locate**) ... in Egypt near the River Nile. 2. Thousands of years ago, the Egyptians (**believe**) ... in life after death. 3. After a person died, the body (**dry**) ... (**wrap**) ... in cloth, and (**make**) ... into a mummy. 4. The mummy (**place**) ... into a coffin, which (**put**) ... inside an underground tomb. 5. Clothing, food, drink, weapons, and other personal possessions (**also bury**) ... with the body. 6. The ancient Egyptians (**believe**) ... that the spirit of the dead person would need them in the next life. 7. Great pyramids (**build**) ... on the surface to honor the Egyptian kings. 8. These four-sided structures (**make**) ... of huge limestone rocks cut from mountains in Southern Egypt and (**float**) ... 700 miles up the Nile River. 9. These rocks, which (**weigh**) ... from two to ten tons, (**pull**) ... over the land from the river and up the side of the pyramid and then set in place. 10. The work (**do**) ... by slaves, who (**use**) ... only ropes and ramps. 11. Even though only simple cutting tools (**use**), the stones (**fit**) ... so tightly together that there were no spaces between the stones. 12. Many pyramids still stand today. The largest pyramid (**call**) ... the Great Pyramid. It (**build**) ... for King Cheops. 13. It covers 13 acres and is about 481 feet high. Over 100,000 slaves (**work**) ... for 20 years to build this giant structure.

**Ex. 233. Open the brackets. Use Active or Passive Voice.**

1. In the United States most people (*to celebrate*) ... their birthdays on the day of the month they (*be born*) ... 2. Birthdays (*to celebrate*) ... with family and friends. Invitations (*to send*) ... for the party. 3. A birthday cake with candles (*to serve*) ... 4. The number of candles (*to represent*) ... the age of the birthday person. 5. The candles (*to light*) ... 6. The person (*to make*) ... three wishes and then (*to blow*) ... the candles out in one breath so the wishes will come true. 7. People (*to sing*) ... “Happy Birthday” and (*to wish*) ... the person health and long life. 8. It is traditional to bring or send birthday cards and gifts to the birthday person. Many people (*to send*) ... flowers. 9. Other gifts can be clothing, books, records, or perfumes. There are birthstones and flowers for each month of the year. This can also be appropriate gifts. 10. Parties for children usually (*to hold*) ... at home. At children’s parties, children (*to wear*) ... birthday hats and get souvenirs from the birthday child. 11. Sometimes birthdays (*to celebrate*) ... at school in the classroom with classmates. 12. Mothers (*to bring*) ... cake, candy and refreshments for the whole class. 13. Some parties (*to cater*) ... at the restaurant. 14. They (*to reserve*) ... a special room for the birthday group and (*to supply*) ... the refreshments and decorations. 15. Some birthdays are special. Girls have a special celebration for the sixteenth birthday, called “sweet sixteen.” The eighteenth birthday is important because it is the legal voting age. The legal age for driving and drinking alcohol varies with each state. 16. Some people (*to want*) ... to celebrate the birthday of a relative or a friend with a “surprise party.” 17. They (*to organize*) ... the party, but the birthday person (*not to find out*) ... about it. 18. When the person (*to come*) ... to the party everyone (*to shout*) ... “SURPRISE!” 19. It is nice to remember the birthday of family and friends. One way to show this is sending birthday cards, making a telephone call, or sending telegrams. 20. Some people (*to make*) ... contributions to charities in the name of the birthday person.

**Ex. 234. Most of these sentences contain one mistake. Correct it or write right.**

1. My neighbor is very proud of her new grandson who born last week. ...
2. I’m very fond of this old brooch because it was belonged to my grandmother. ...
3. My family live in Ukraine but I was educated in Britain. ...



4. I'm afraid I can't lend you my camera. It's repairing this week. ...
5. The bridge was collapsed during the floods but fortunately no one was using it at the time. ...
6. If you aren't careful what you're doing with that hammer someone will hurt in a minute! ...
7. The word 'stupid' was in my report but it wasn't referred to you. ...
8. I'm sorry I am late. I got held up in the traffic. ...
9. When did you discover that the money had been disappeared?  
...
10. Children under the age of seven do not allow in this pool. ...

**Ex. 235. Complete the sentences. If possible, use a tense of the verb *get*. Otherwise use the verb *be*.**

1. I never found that book we were looking for. It ... lost when we moved to the new house.
2. After the way he behaved last time he went to their house it's unlikely he ... asked there again.
3. Naturally this vase is very expensive. After all, it ... believed to be over three hundred years old.
4. I phoned to explain what happened but I ... cut off before I could finish.
5. There isn't any cheese left; I'm afraid but it ... eaten by the children.
6. He was a well-known expert on animal diseases and his opinions ... greatly respected.
7. The competition is stiff and she'll be thrilled if her design ... chosen.
8. The book ... torn when the children started fighting over who should read it first.
9. Please don't touch anything on my desk. You ... employed to answer the telephone, not to tidy the office.
10. She was quite friendly at first, then she ... promoted and now she doesn't care about us any more.

**Ex. 236. Rewrite the sentences beginning in the way shown. Do not use *by* unless it is important to the meaning.**

1. The company has cut all salaries. All salaries *have been cut*.
2. The bank manager kept me waiting for half an hour. I ... .

3. Employers must pay all travel expenses for this training course. All travel expenses for this training course ... .
4. Do you suppose your brother could have written such a letter? Do you suppose such a letter... ?
5. They use a computer to do that job nowadays. A computer ... .
6. During the recession, the firm was making people redundant almost every week. During the recession people... .
7. Nobody informed the police that there had been a mistake. The police ... .
8. Where will your company send you next year? Where will you ... ?
9. The news about the famine distressed Margaret. Margaret ... .
10. I've still got the camera because no one has claimed it. I've still got the camera because it ... .
11. Has anyone ever asked you for your opinion? Have you ... ?
12. The children shouldn't have opened that parcel. That parcel ... .
13. All visitors must wear identity badges. Identity badges ... .

**Ex. 237. Put the verbs into a suitable tense in the passive.**

Mary has just arrived from work. Neil is already there.

MARY: Hi! I'm back. Sorry I'm late.

NEIL: Hello. What kept you?

MARY: I had to use the ring road and I (1) ... (*stick*) in a traffic jam for thirty minutes.

NEIL: Why didn't you use the usual route?

MARY: Because the road (2) ... (*close*) until work on the access road to the new hospital (3) ... (*complete*).

NEIL: When is it due to (4) ... (*finish*)?

MARY: Well, the access road (5) ... (*open*) by the Mayor next week, according to the newspaper, and the health Minister (6) ... (*invite*) to open the hospital on the same day, but they don't know yet whether she's definitely coming.

NEIL: A lot of money (7) ... (*waste*) if she doesn't come.

MARY: Why's that?

NEIL: Haven't you seen all those rose bushes that (8) ... (*plant*) round the hospital?

MARY: So? They'll be lovely for the patients.

NEIL: But the patients won't be able to see them, because they're round the entrance, and the wards look out in the other direction.

A lot of people protested about it, but all their complaints (9) ... (*ignore*) until it was too late.

MARY: If they had money to spare, it (10) ... (*spend*) on the facilities for patients, not on making the front look pretty for the Minister.

NEIL: Absolutely. It's typical of this local council. They (11) ... (*elect*) to save money, but they do just the opposite.

MARY: Perhaps they (12) ... (*throw*) out at the next election.

Neil: I hope so. Now, are you ready for supper?

### INTERMEDIATE TEST

Ex. 238. Choose the correct variant.

- I \_\_\_ her birthday and I \_\_\_ how to make it up to her.  
A. *completely forgot ... don't just know*  
B. *forgot completely ... don't just know*  
C. *completely forgot... just don't know*  
D. *forgot completely ... just don't know*
- \_\_\_ brought some food.  
A. *My mother has only*    B. *My mother only has*  
C. *My only mother has*    D. *Only my mother has*
- We were delayed \_\_\_ an accident.  
A. *because*    B. *because of there was*  
C. *because there was*
- If I \_\_\_ a more reliable car, I \_\_\_ to Spain rather than fly.  
A. *would have ... would drive*    B. *had ... had driven*  
C. *had ... would drive*    D. *would have had ... would drive*
- John was the first person I saw \_\_\_ hospital.  
A. *by leaving*    B. *on leaving*  
C. *in leaving*    D. *on to leave*
- He suddenly saw Sue \_\_\_ the room. He pushed his way \_\_\_ the crowd of people to get to her.  
A. *across ... through*    B. *over ... through*  
C. *across ... across*    D. *over ... along*
- About ten of us were taken ill \_\_\_ a party we were at in York. I felt ill \_\_\_ a couple of days, but was fine after that.  
A. *for ... during*    B. *for ... for*  
C. *during ... during*    D. *during ... for*

8. A: "What do you think \_\_ my car? I've just bought it."

B: "It's really good. Actually, I'm thinking \_\_ my motorbike and getting a car, too."

A. *about ... to sell*    B. *about ... about selling*

C. *of ... to sell*    D. *of ... of selling*

9. She tried to

A. *talk me the plan out of*    B. *talk out of me the plan*

C. *talk me out of the plan*    D. *talk out me of the plan*

10. I \_\_ you can swim so well and I can't.

A. *hate*

B. *hate it that*

C. *hate it*

MAY 11

---

---

## REPORTED SPEECH

---

---

**Ex. 239. Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech. Sequence of Tenses.**

**Rewrite the sentences into Indirect Speech.**

1. "I can't swim." (*She told us ...*) 2. "They've been away for a long time." (*He told that ...*) 3. "You don't eat enough!" (*She told me ...*) 4. "She has got red hair." (*He told us ...*) 5. "I know I won't be able to do it." (*He said that ...*) 6. "It's the worst job I've ever had." (*He told the manager ...*) 7. "We're going to stay in London." (*They told us ...*) 8. "She's hurt her ankle rather badly." (*The doctor said that ...*) 9. "They aren't English." (*He told us ...*) 10. "I think she'll come." (*He told me ...*) 11. "I know I can do the job." (*I told them ...*) 12. "She doesn't think she'll be there." (*He said that ...*) 13. "They're the best secretaries I've ever had." (*Boris said that ...*) 14. "I'm afraid she's broken her leg." (*The doctor said ...*) 15. "I've decided I'm going to stay in London after all." (*He told us ...*)

**Ex. 240. Put the following sentences into Indirect Speech.**

1. "I have something to show you," I said to her. 2. "Nothing grows in my garden. It never gets any sun," she said. 3. "I'm going away tomorrow, mother," he said. 4. "I've been in London for a month but so far I haven't had time to visit the Tower," said Roger. 5. "It isn't so foggy today as it was yesterday," I remarked. 6. "The new underpass is being officially opened the day after tomorrow," said the CNN announcer. 7. "We have moved into our new flat. We don't like it nearly so much as our last one," said my aunt. 8. "We have a lift but very often it doesn't work," they said. 9. "From one of the windows of my flat I can see the Tower of London," said my friend. 10. "I've no idea what the time is but I'll dial 060 and find out," said my daughter. 11. He said, "My wife has just been made a judge." 12. "I'll come with you as soon as I am ready," she replied. 13. "I have a German lesson this afternoon and I haven't done my homework yet," said the boy. 14. "If you let the iron get too hot you

will scorch your clothes,” I warned her. 15. “You haven’t given me quite enough. The bill is for \$14 and you’ve paid me only \$13,” he pointed out. 16. Pat said, “Englishmen make good husbands because they are nearly always willing to help in the house.” 17. Maggy answered, “I like men to be useful but I don’t like them to be too domesticated. I prefer them to keep out of the kitchen altogether. My son looks silly in aprons anyway.” 18. Yesterday Bill and I went to look at a house that he was thinking of buying. It was rather a nice house and had a lovely garden but Bill decided against it because it was opposite the cemetery,” said Julia. 19. “I don’t know what to do with all my plums. I suppose I’ll have to make jam,” she said. 20. “We like working on Sundays because we get double pay,” explained the builders.

**Ex. 241. Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.**

1. He said, “I am quite a good cook and I do all my own washing and mending too.” 2. “You can keep that one if you like, Alice,” she said. “I’ve got plenty of others.” 3. “I’m going fishing with father this afternoon,” said the small boy, “and we are going into the garden now to dig for worms.” 4. “You got my umbrella,” said I crossly. “Yours is in your bedroom.” 5. “I know exactly what they said,” the private detective explained to his client, “because I put a tape-recorder under the table.” 6. “I’ll sit up till she comes in, but I hope she won’t be late,” said Mrs. Pike. 7. “If you give me some wire, I’ll hang that picture for you,” said my brother. 8. “I have a Turkish bath occasionally, but it doesn’t seem to make any difference to my weight,” she said.

**Ex. 242. Put the following questions into Indirect Speech.**

A: 1. Who is that man? 2. What has happened to Peter? 3. Will he be at the meeting? 4. Would she like to come? 5. Does he speak English? 6. Why hasn’t he called? 7. Are there any good books on this subject? 8. Have you ever been to England? 9. Shall I take these pills before or after meals? 10. How often does he have his hair cut? 11. What does he want to see? 12. When did Mr. Wilson buy his new car? 13. Does he want to see me? 14. Who made that noise?

B: 1. “Why are you looking through the keyhole?” I said. 2. “Who put salt in my coffee?” he asked. 3. “Which of you knows how to make Irish stew?” said the chief cook. 4. “Why did you travel first

class?" I asked him. 5. "How can I possibly run in these high-heeled shoes?" she inquired. 6. "What is your new house like?" I asked him. 7. He said, "Where am I supposed to go now?" 8. "Whose car did you borrow last night?" I said to him. 9. "What was she wearing when you saw her last?" the policeman asked me. 10. "Who owns this revolver?" said the detective. 11. "Where were you last night, Mr. Jones?" he said. 12. "What else did you see?" I asked the boy. 13. "Have you done this sort of work before?" said his new employer. 14. "Can you read the last line of the chart?" the oculist asked the patient. 15. "Did you understand what they said to you?" he inquired. 16. "Are you being attended to, sir?" asked the shop assistant. 17. "Will you go on strike when others do?" the shop steward asked him. 18. "Do you see what I see, Mary?" said the young man. 19. "Who left the banana skin on the doorstep?" said my mother. 20. "Have you gone completely mad?" I asked. "Do you want to blow us all up?" 21. "Are you leaving today or tomorrow morning?" said the secretary. 22. "How far is it?" I said, "and how long will it take me to get there?" 23. "Could I speak to Mrs. Pith?" said the caller. "I'm afraid she's out," said the girl. "Can I take a message for her?" 24. "Are you sorry for what you did?" I asked her. 25. "Are you going to see her off to the railway station?" I asked him. 26. "Would you mind if I looked inside your bag, Madam?" said the policeman. 27. "If someone fell off at your feet foaming at the mouth would you know what to do?" said the instructor in First Aid.

#### **Ex. 243. Put the following into Indirect Speech.**

1. "Let's go to the cinema," said Ann. 2. "It's the government fault, let them do something about it," grumbled my father. 3. "Let me stay up a little longer tonight, mother," begged the child. 4. "I've worked for you for ten years," said the man. "What about giving me a rise?" 5. The police officer said, "Let's leave the wrecked car here for a bit. It may remind other drivers to be more careful." 6. "I've helped you every time up to now," said his teacher. "Why don't you try to do the next one by yourself?" 7. "Let no one speak to that man," said the strike leader. "He is a blackleg." 8. "Tom made this mess. Let him clear it up," said his father. 9. "Get yourself some new clothes," I suggested. 10. "I can't go with you today," said the guide, "but suppose you go by yourselves? It's quite a safe route." 11. "Let's give a party," said Ann. "Let's not," said her

husband. 12. I said, "Let's not jump to conclusions, let's wait till we confirmation of the rumor." 13. "Suppose you stop working now and go to bed?" He said. "You'll be much fresher in the morning." 14. "Let the nations forget their differences and work together for peace," said the preacher. 15. "Let me explain," she said. "Don't be in such a hurry." 16. "Let the children play in the garden if they want to," she told the gardener. "I'm sure they won't do any harm."

**Ex. 244. Change the following sentences into Direct Speech with the appropriate punctuation.**

1. She asked if he'd like to go to the concert and I said that I was sure he would. 2. She told me to look where I was going as the road was full of holes and very badly lit. 3. They said that while they were bathing they saw someone examining their clothes. 4. I asked if she had looked everywhere and she said that she had. 5. He suggested giving her a bottle of wine. 6. He said that the new carpet had arrived and asked where he was to put it. 7. He said that two days previously an enormous load of firewood had been dumped at his front gate and that since then he hadn't been able to get his car out. 8. They offered me some wine and I accepted. 9. He said that if I found the front door locked I was to go round to the back. 10. She asked the burglars who they were and who had let them in. They told her to sit down and keep quiet unless she wanted to get hurt. 11. He asked what the weather had been like during my holidays and I said that it had been awful. 12. He suggested going down to the harbour and seeing if they could hire a boat. 13. He said that if I don't like escalators I could go up the emergency staircase. I thanked him and said that I would do that. 14. He suggested that Andy and I should go ahead and get the tickets.

**Ex. 245. Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.**

1. He asked angrily, "Why are you smiling to yourself and don't answer my questions at once?" 2. The girl said, "I'm thinking of the summer spent in Spain." 3. She said to Nick, "When are you going to visit them?" "I have no time," replied Nick. 4. Lily said, "I'm making a new dress, I want to wear it at our party." 5. Mary said, "We're thinking of going out." 6. The teacher asked, "Are you listening carefully, John?" 7. She asked him, "Is Kate coming tomorrow?" 8. I said, "Is Bill studying for an examination now?" 9. Father said,



“Melanie is doing her morning exercises, I don’t want to disturb her.” 10. Mother said, “You are forgetting your manners, Alex?”

**Ex. 246. Put the following sentences into Direct Speech with appropriate punctuation.**

1. He said that he thought my electric iron was unsafe and advised me to have it seen to. 2. He said that if war broke out he would have to leave the country at once. 3. I asked him if he had enjoyed hunting and he said that he hadn’t. 4. She said that she was surprised to see that her grandmother’s clock had stopped and asked if anyone had been fiddling with it. 5. She said that she had tried to ring her mother up several times on the previous day but hadn’t succeeded in getting through. 6. I asked her if she would borrow the book but she thanked me and said that she had already read it and hadn’t liked it very much. 7. He wanted to know if I was going to the dance and suggested that we should make up a party and go together. 8. I told her to stop making a fuss about nothing and said that she was lucky to have got a seat at all. 9. The clerk in the booking office inquired if I wanted a single or a return ticket. I asked if a return ticket was cheaper. He said it made no difference. 10. My employer hoped I would not be offended if he told me that, in his opinion, I would do better in some other kind of job. 11. The man told the woman that if the wheels had gone a couple of inches nearer the edge, the car would have plunged into the ravine. 12. He said I mustn’t mind if the first one wasn’t any good. 13. He asked the crowd if they thought he was a liar and the crowd shouted that they did. 14. I stopped a man in the street and asked him to help me with my car. The man asked if it would take long, explaining that he was on his way to catch a train.

**Ex. 247. Make up a dialogue from the following story.**

Joan worked in a shop selling gramophone records. One day a middle-aged woman came in, sat on a stool in front of the counter and beamed at Joan. Addressing Joan familiarly, she said she wanted a record – one she had heard on the radio that morning. Joan asked what the record was called. The woman shook her head, and said she didn’t remember, though she would know it if she heard it. She suggested that Joan should play her some, and settled herself comfortably on her stool. Joan pointed out that they had hundreds

of records in stock, and that it would take a very long time to play her even a little of each. She asked the lady if she could hum it to her. The woman giggled, and replied that she couldn't sing "God save the Queen" in tune. They would get into a worse muddle if she started humming. She looked very depressed, but suddenly her face brightened. She had just remembered, she said; it came from a play in which there was a woman who spoke very badly, but who after a time learned to talk beautifully. Joan asked if it would be from *My Fair Lady*. The woman exclaimed that that was it. She wished Joan had thought of it earlier instead of wasting time asking silly questions. She supposed Joan was new to the shop.

**Ex. 248. Change the following dialogue in Indirect Speech.**

*Martin.* I say, Nick, can you show me around a bit? I only came here two days ago and I haven't been anywhere as yet.

*Nick.* Of course, I shall do it with pleasure. Let's go at once. And let's invite Alice to come with us. She knows a lot about the places of interest here.

*Martin.* That's a good idea.

*Nick.* Alice, can you come with us? We are going for a walk, and I want to show Martin some places of interest.

*Alice.* No, I can't go with you, boys. I'm sorry. Mother told me to buy some bread, and I forgot about it. I shall have to do it now. Go without me. I shall go with you some other time.

*Nick.* It's a pity. All right, Martin, let's go.

**Ex. 249. Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.**

1. "Will you come and see me on Friday?" Jane asked her friend. "All right," said the friend. "I shall be free on Friday." 2. "Soon I shall know the whole poem perfectly," said Mary. "I have already learnt more than a half of it." 3. "Have you got a Ukrainian-English dictionary?" he asked me. "Can you let me have it for this evening? I must do some very difficult translation." "All right," said I. "I won't need it tonight." 4. "I'm fond of Dickens," said Jack. "I've been reading "The Old Curiosity Shop" the whole week. I like the novel very much. I'm reading it for the second time." 5. The shop assistant said, "The shoe department is downstairs." 6. She asked me, "Do you know who has taken my book?" 7. The professor said to his assistant, "You have made great progress." 8. Last night

I was called to the telephone. An unfamiliar voice said, “Is that Andrew speaking? My name is Harlow. I have come from London today. I have brought some books for you from your friends. I’m staying at the ‘Europe’ Hotel. When and where can I see you?” “Let’s meet at the monument to Shevchenko in the center of the city at five o’clock if it is convenient for you,” I said. “All right,” he answered, “I shall be there.” 9. She asked me, “Where have you put my gloves? I cannot find them.” 10. We asked him, “What has happened to you? Why are you so pale?”



**MAY 11**

---

---

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

---

---

### Conditional Sentences. Remember three types of Conditional Sentences.

<i>Model 1</i>	1. <i>If</i> the weather <i>is</i> fine, we <i>shall play</i> outside. <i>If</i> you <i>ring</i> me up, I <i>shall tell</i> you something.
<i>Model 2</i>	2. <i>If</i> the weather <i>were</i> fine, we <i>should play</i> outside. <i>If</i> you <i>rang</i> me up, I <i>should tell</i> you something.
<i>Model 3</i>	3. <i>If</i> the weather <i>had been</i> fine, we <i>should have played</i> outside. <i>If</i> you <i>had rung</i> me up, I <i>should have told</i> you something.

**Ex. 250.** Now, write each of the following sentences three times according to the models.

1. If you (*to be*) ... busy, I (*to leave*) ... you alone. 2. If I (*to live*) ... in London, I (*to visit*) ... the Madame Tousseau Museum every year. 3. If I (*to get*) ... a ticket, I (*to go*) ... to the Philharmonic. 4. If I (*to live*) ... near a wood, I (*to gather*) ... a lot of mushrooms. 5. If my father (*to return*) ... early, we (*to watch*) ... TV together. 6. If she (*to know*) ... English, she (*to try*) ... to enter the university. 7. If my friend (*to come*) ... to see me, I (*to be*) ... very happy. 8. If mother (*to buy*) ... a cake, we (*to have*) ... a very nice tea party. 9. If we (*to receive*) ... a telegram from him, we (*not to worry*) ... . 10. If you (*not to work*) ... systematically, you (*to fail*) ... at the examination.

**Ex. 251.** Rewrite each of the following sentences two times, forming the unreal condition sentences: a) referring to the Present or Future (Second Conditional); b) referring to the Past (Third Conditional).

1. If I am not too busy, I shall go to the concert. 2. If no one comes to help, we shall be obliged to do the work ourselves. 3. If you put on your glasses, you will see better. 4. What shall we do if they are late? 5. Will you be very angry if we don't come? 6. Will he be displeased if I don't ring him up? 7. They will all be very surprised if I make such a mistake. 8. If he doesn't come in time, shall we

have to wait for him? 9. If I have a lot of money, I shall buy a new Mercedes car. 10. I shall go to the party if I am not so busy.

**Ex. 252. Conditional sentences, Present/Future. Complete the sentences with the words in brackets.**

1. I'm not an astronaut. If I (*be*) ... an astronaut, I (*take*) ... my camera with me on the rocket ship next month. 2. Most people know that oil floats on water. If you pour oil on water, it (*float*) ... . 3. If there (*be*) ... no oxygen on earth, life as we know it (*exist, not*) ... . 4. My evening newspaper has been late every day this week. If the paper (*arrive, not*) ... on time today, I'm going to cancel my subscription. 5. If I (*be*) ... a bird, I (*want, not*) ... to live in a cage. 6. Sea water is salty. If the oceans (*consist*) ... of fresh water, there (*be*) ... plenty of water to irrigate all of the deserts in the world to provide an abundant food supply for the entire population of the earth. 7. It is expensive to call across the ocean. However, if transoceanic telephone calls (*be*) ... cheap, I (*call*) ... my family every day and (*talk*) ... for hours. 8. Rhone's hobby is collecting stamps from all over the world. If he (*travel*) ... to a new country, he (*spend, always*) ... time looking for new stamps. That's how he has acquired such a large collection of valuable stamps. 9. How old (*live, human beings*) ... to be if all diseases in the world (*be*) ... completely eradicated? 10. If you boil water, it (*disappear*) ... into the atmosphere as vapor. 11. If people (*have*) ... paws instead of hands with fingers, the machines we use in everyday life (*have to*) ... be constructed very differently. We (*be, not*) ... able to turn knobs, push small buttons, or hold tools or utensils securely.

**Ex. 253. Conditional sentences, past time. Complete the sentences with the words in brackets. All of the sentences to complete are "contrary to fact."**

1. I'm sorry you had to take a cab to the airport. I didn't know you needed a ride. If you (*tell*) ... me, I (*give*) ... you a ride gladly.
2. You made a lot of unnecessary mistakes in your composition. If you (*use*) ... a dictionary to check your spelling, you (*receive*) ... a better grade.
3. A: Shh! Your father is taking a nap. Oh-oh. You woke him up.  
B: Gee, I'm sorry, Mom. If I (*realize*) ... he was sleeping, I (*make, not*) ... so much noise when I came in. But how was I supposed to know?

4. Many people were not satisfied with the leader after he took office. If they (**know**) ... more about his planned economic programs , they (**vote, not**) ... for him.
5. Last night George ruined his sweater when he washed it. If he (**read**) ... the label, he (**wash, not**) ... it in hot water.
6. A: Ever since I broke my foot, I haven't been able to get down to the basement to wash my clothes.  
B: Why didn't you say anything? I (**come**) ... over and (**wash**) ... them for you if you (**ask**) ... me.  
A: I know you (**come**) ... right away if I (**call**) ... you. I guess I didn't just want to bother you.  
B: Nonsense! What are good neighbors for?
7. A: Oh, no! I've lost it!  
B: Lost what?  
A: The address for my job interview this afternoon. I wrote it on a match book.  
B: A match book! If you (**write**) ... the address in your appointment book where it belongs, you (**lose, not**) ... it. When are you going to get organized?
8. A: Julia, (**you, take**) ... that job if you (**know**) ... that you had to work nights?  
B: No way. I had no idea I'd have to work the late night hours they've had me working.

**Ex. 254. Conditional sentences. Complete the sentences with the words in brackets.**

1. If I (**have**) ... wings, I (**have to, not**) ... take an airplane to fly home.
2. This letter has got to be in London in two days. I'm sure if I (**send**) ... it today, it will arrive in time.
3. Hundreds of people became ill from eating contaminated meat during the last two weeks. If the government had responded more quickly to the crisis, fewer people (**suffer**) ... food poisoning.
4. (**People, be**) ... able to fly if they (**have**) ... feathers instead of hair?
5. What (**we, use**) ... to look at ourselves when we comb our hair in the morning if we (**have, not**) ... mirrors?
6. A: I don't understand anything in this class. I'm boring. And I 'm getting a failing grade.

B: If I (*feel*) ... the way you do about it I (*drop*) ... the class as soon as possible.

7. It's been a long drought. It hasn't rained for over a month. If it (*rain, not*) ... soon, a lot of crops (*die*) .... If the crops (*die*) ..., many people (*go*) ... hungry this coming winter.
8. I didn't know the Browns were going to bring two other people to dinner last night. If anyone else (*bring*) ... extra guests, we (*have, not*) ... enough seats at the table.
9. If television (*invent*) ... in the eighteenth century, George Washington (*interview*) ... regularly on the evening news.
10. A: I'm exhausted, and we're no closer to a solution to this problem after nine hours of work. B: Why don't you go home and get some sleep, and I'll be working. If I (*discover*) ... a solution before morning, I (*call*) ... you immediately. I promise.
11. A: I can't believe that you haven't finished that report. What will I use in the committee meeting at noon today?  
B: I'm really sorry. If I (*know*) ... you needed it today, I (*stay up*) ... all night last night and (*finish*) ... it.
12. According to one scientific theory, an asteroid collided with the earth millions of years ago, causing great changes in the earth's climate. Some scientists believe that if this asteroid (*collide, not*) ... with the earth, the dinosaurs (*become, not*) ... extinct. Can you imagine what the world (*be*) ... like today if dinosaurs (*exist, still*) ... Do you think it (*be*) ... possible for dinosaurs and human beings to coexist on the same planet?

**Ex. 255. Conditionals. Complete the sentences with the words in brackets.**

**Kurt:** What's wrong, Pete? You look as if you (*run*) ... over by a truck! **Pete:** Well, you (*look*) ... this bad today, too, if you (*have*) ... a day like mine yesterday. My car slid into a tree because the roads were icy. **Kurt:** Oh? I was driving on the icy roads yesterday, and I didn't slide into the tree. What happened?

**Pete:** Well, I suppose if I (*drive, not*) ... so fast, I (*slide, not*) ... into the tree.

**Kurt:** Icy roads and speed don't mix. If drivers (*step*) ... on the gait on ice, they're likely to spin their car in a circle.

**Pete:** I know! And not only my car is a mess now, but I didn't have my driver's license with me, so now I'll have to pay an extra fine when I go to court next month.

**Kurt:** Why were you driving without your license?

**Pete:** Well, I lost my wallet a few days ago. It slipped out of my pocket while I was riding the bus to work.

**Kurt:** What a tale of woe! If you (*take, not*) ... that bus, you (*lose, not*) ... your wallet. If you (*lose, not*) ... your wallet, you (*have*) ... your driver's license with you when you hit a tree. If you (*have*) ... your license with you, you (*have to pay, not*) ... a big fine when you go to court next week. And of course, if you (*drive, not*) ... too fast, you (*run into, not*) ... a tree, and you (*be, not*) ... in this mess now. If I (*be*) ... you, I (*take*) ... it easy for a while and just (*stay*) ... home where you're safe and sound.

**Pete:** Enough about me! How about you?

**Kurt:** Well, things are really looking up for me. I'm planning to take off for LA as soon as I finish my finals. I'm sick of all this cold, rainy weather we've been having. I (*stay*) ... here for vacation if the weather (*be, not*) ... so bad. But I need some sun!

**Pete:** I wish I (*go*) ... with you. How are you planning of getting there?

**Kurt:** If I have enough money, I (*fly*) .... Otherwise, I (*take*) ... the bus. I wish I (*drive*) ... my own car because it (*be*) ... nice to have it to drive around in once I get there, but it's such a long trip. I've been looking for a friend to go with me and share the driving.

**Pete:** Hey, I have a super idea. Why don't I go with you? I can share the driving. I'm a great driver!

**Kurt:** Didn't you just get through telling that you'd wrapped your car around a tree?

**Ex. 256. Conditional sentences. Choose the correct answer.**

1. When I stopped talking, Bryan finished my sentence for me as though he ... my mind.

A: *would read*    B: *had read*

C: *reads*            D: *can read*

2. If you ..., I would have brought my friends over to your house this evening to watch TV, but I didn't want to bother you.

A: *had studied*    B: *studied*

C: *hadn't been studying*    D: *didn't study*

3. I wish I ... you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.

A: *can lend*            B: *would lend*            C: *could lend*            D: *will lend*



4. If someone ... into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?"  
*A: comes      B: came      C: would come      D: could come*
5. "Are we lost?" "I think so. I wish we ... a map with us today."  
*A: were bringing      B: brought*  
*C: had brought      D: would bring*
6. "Here's my phone number." "Thanks. I'll give you a call if I ... some help tomorrow."  
*A: will need      B: need      C: would need      D: needed*
7. If I weren't working for an accountant firm, I ... in a bank.  
*A: work      B: will work*  
*C: have worked      D: would be working*
8. Paul invested a lot of money with a dishonest advisor, and lost nearly all of it. Now he is having serious financial problems. He ... in this position if he had listened to some of his friends.  
*A: will be      B: wouldn't be      C: will be      D: hadn't been*
9. The world ... a better place if we had known a hundred years ago what we know today about the earth's environment.  
*A: will be      B: was      C: should be      D: might be*
10. The medicine made me feel dizzy. I felt as though the room ... around and around.  
*A: were spinning      B: will spin*  
*C: spins      D: would be spinning*

**Ex. 257. Choose the correct answer.**

1. Please keep your voice down in this section of the library. If you ... to talk loudly, I will have to ask you to leave.  
*A: continued      B: could continue*  
*C: will continue      D: continue*
2. Celia never seems to get tired, I sure wish I ... her energy.  
*A: would have      B: have      C: have had      D: had*
3. If I could find Magi's phone number, I ... her about the change in plans. Maybe somebody else will call her.  
*A: called      B: had called      C: could call      D: will call*
4. "How do you like your new apartment?"  
 "The apartment itself is great, but I wish I ... used to the constant noise from the street below."  
*A: got      B: could get      C: had gotten      D: am*
5. If I ... following that other car too closely, I would have been able to stop in time instead of running into it.

A: *wasn't*

B: *would have been*

C: *was*

D: *hadn't been*

6. "Why aren't you going mountain climbing with the rest of us next weekend?"

"To be honest with you, I'm a coward. If I were brave, I ... with you."

A: *would have gone*

B: *would go*

C: *go*

D: *will go*

7. I'm really sleepy today. I wish I ... Ann to the airport late last night.

A: *didn't have to take*

B: *weren't taking*

C: *hadn't had to take*

D: *didn't take*

8. Hurry! We've got to leave the house immediately. Otherwise, ... the opening ceremony.

A: *we'd miss*

B: *we'd have missed*

C: *we miss*

D: *we're going to miss*

9. "Why didn't you tell me you were having so many problems?"  
"I ... you, but I figured you had enough to worry about without my problems, so I said nothing."

A: *would tell*

B: *would haven told*

C: *would be telling*

D: *had told*

10. A nation's balance of trade is considered unfavorable if it ... more money on imports than it gains from exports.

A: *will spend*

B: *would spend*

C: *can spend*

D: *spends*

11. A huge tree crashed through the bedroom roof and broke my bed and most of the other furniture. ... in the room, I would have been killed.

A: *Should I be*

B: *Had I been*

C: *Would I have been*

D: *Would I be*

12. If everyone ..., how would we control air traffic? Surely, we'd all be crashing into each other.

A: *can fly*

B: *will fly*

C: *flies*

D: *could fly*

**Ex. 258. Open the brackets, using the verbs in the necessary form.**

1. I should be delighted if I (**to have**) ... such a beautiful fur-coat.  
2. If it (**to rain**) ... , we shall have to stay at home. 3. If he (**to work**) ... hard, he would have achieved great progress. 4. If it is not too cold, I (**not to put**) ... on my coat. 5. I (**to write**) ... the composition

long ago if you hadn't disturbed me. 6. If he (**not to read**) ... so much, he would not be so clever. 7. If my friend (**to be**) ... at home, he will tell us what to do. 8. If he were not an outstanding actor, he (**not to have**) ... so many admirers. 9. If you (**to give**) ... your address, I shall write you a letter. 10. If she (**not to be**) ... so absent-minded, she would be a much better student. 11. If my sister doesn't go to the south, we (**to spend**) ... summer in Kiev together. 12. If they (**not to go**) ... to Paris last year, they would not have heard that famous musician. 13. If you (**not to get**) ... tickets for the Philharmonic, we shall stay at home. 14. If you were not so careless about your health, you (**to consult**) ... the doctor.

**Ex. 259. Open the brackets. Use the necessary verb form.**

1. If you (**to ring**) ... me up, I shall tell you a secret. 2. If you (**to be**) ... a poet, you would write beautiful poetry. 3. If he didn't read so much, he (**not to know**) ... English literature so well. 4. If he (**to come**) ... to our house yesterday, he would have met his friend. 5. If he (**not to pass**) ... his examination, he will not get a scholarship. 6. If she (**not to help**) ... me, I should have been in a very difficult situation. 7. My father would have more free time if he (**not to read**) ... so many newspapers. 8. If only you had let me know, I (**to go**) ... there immediately. 9. If I were a famous singer, I (**to get**) ... a lot of flowers every day. 10. If I (**not to buy**) ... coffee, we shall drink tea. 11. If he is free tomorrow, he certainly (**to come**) ... to our party. 12. My brother would not have missed so many lessons if he (**not to hurt**) ... his leg. 13. If my friend (**to work**) ... in my office, we should meet every day. 14. If you spoke English every day, you (**to improve**) ... your language skills. 15. If you get a "five," your mother (**to be**) ... happy. 16. If she (**to return**) earlier, she would have been able to see him before he left. 17. If these shoes were not too big for me, I (**to buy**) ... them.

**Ex. 260. Use the verbs in brackets in the necessary form.**

1. How slippery it is! If it (**not to rain**) ..., it (**not to be**) ... so slippery. 2. I am glad I was able to attend the lecture yesterday. You (**to be**) ... displeased if I (**not to come**) ... . 3. Let's take a taxi to the railway station: We have very much luggage. If we (**not to have**) ... so much luggage, we (**to walk**) ... . 4. Stop working and let's go inside: it is too dark. If the evening (**not to be**) ... so dark, we (**to continue**) ... to work. 5. I don't believe you: you only say you want to know

languages. If you (*to be*) ... really interested in languages, you (*to study*) ... them. 6. I am sorry you don't read English novels; if you (*to read*) ... them, I (*to lend*) ... you some very interesting ones. 7. You say that you didn't read yesterday's papers; if you (*to read*) ... them, you (*to see*) ... the announcement of professor X's coming to our town. 8. He is not ill: if he (*to be*) ... ill, he (*not to play*) ... tennis so much. 9. He was not ill last week: if he (*to be*) ... ill, he (*not to take*) ... part in the football match.

**Ex. 261. Make up Conditional sentences.**

1. You didn't ring me up, so I didn't know you were in trouble. *If...* 2. You left the child alone in the room, so it hurt himself. *If...* 3. They spent a year in the tropics, so they got very sun-tanned. *If...* 4. It rained heavily, so we got wet through. *If...* 5. Why didn't you watch the cat? It ate all the fish. *If...* 6. A huge black cloud appeared from behind the forest, so we had to turn back and hurry home. *If...* 7. The travelers had no camera with them, so they could not take photos of the beautiful scenery. *If...* 8. There was no sugar left, so we had to go to the shop late in the evening. *If...* 9. This house is very nice and comfortable, but it is not very good for living because it is situated close to the chemical plant and the air around is very bad. *If...* 10. He is an excellent specialist, but I can not ask his advise because I am not acquainted with him. *If...* 11. You cannot enjoy this merry evening party because you have a toothache. *If...* 12. You know the material well enough, but you are very absent-minded, that's why you always make many mistakes. *If...* 13. We shall not go see them because it is very late. *If...* 14. Naturally she was very angry, because you were in her way. *If...* 15. He always gets top marks in mathematics because it is his favorite subject and she works a lot at it. *If...*

**Ex. 262. Make up Conditional sentences.**

1. I didn't translate the article yesterday because I had no dictionary. *If...* 2. We lost our way because the night was pitch-dark. *If...* 3. The box was so heavy that I couldn't carry it. That's why I took a taxi. *If...* 4. I had a bad headache yesterday, that's why I didn't come to see you. *If...* 5. The ship was sailing near the coast, that's why it struck a rock. *If...* 6. He was not in town, therefore he wasn't present at our meeting. *If...* 7. The pavement was so slippery

that I fell and hurt my leg. *If...* . 8. They made a fire, and the frightened wolves ran away. *If...* . 9. It is late, and I have to go home. *If...* . 10. I was expecting my friend to come, that's why I couldn't go to the cinema with you. *If...* . 11. The sea is rough, and we cannot sail to the island. *If...* . 12. He is busy and does not come to see us. *If...* . 13. The girl did not study well last year and received bad marks. *If...* . 14. He broke his bicycle and so he didn't go to the country. *If...* . 15. He speaks English badly: he has no practice. *If...* .

**Ex. 263. Express wishes and regrets about the present and the past.**

**Models:** I'm small. *I wish I wasn't small.*

We live in the city. *We wished we lived in the city.*

1. I'm not having a holiday this year. *I wish....* . 2. I'm going to the dentist tomorrow. *I wish....* . 3. I can't ski. *I wish....* . 4. John won't come to my party. *I wish....* . 5. I wasn't happy at school. *I wish....* . 6. It rained the whole of my holiday. *I wish....* . 7. He didn't pass his driving test. *He wishes....* . 8. He failed his driving test. *He wishes....* . 9. I haven't been to Switzerland. *I wish....* . 10. The streets are very dirty. *I wish...* . 11. I'm out of work. *I wish...* . 12. There is nothing good on TV tonight. *I wish....* . 13. He likes chocolate so much. *I wish....* . 14. I've put on a lot of weight. *I wish....* . 15. I left school at sixteen. *I wish....* . 16. My girlfriend didn't ring me last night. *I wish...* .

**Ex. 264. Open the brackets, using the *I wish...* construction.**

1. I wish I (*to know*) ... German. 2. I wish I (*not to drink*) ... so much coffee in the evening: I couldn't sleep half the night. 3. I wish you (*to read*) ... more in future. 4. I wish I never (*to suggest*) ... this idea. 5. I wish (*to be*) ... at yesterday's party: it must have been very funny. 6. I wish we (*to meet*) ... again next summer. 7. Don't you wish you (*to see*) ... that performance before? 8. They wished they (*not to see*) ... this horrible scene again. 9. The unfortunate pupil wished he (*not to forget*) ... to learn the rule. 10. I wish I (*to have*) ... a season ticket to the Philharmonic next winter. 11. I wish I (*to consult*) ... the teacher when I first felt that mathematics was too difficult for me. 12. I love sunny weather. I wish it (*to be*) ... warm and fine all year round. 13. I wish I (*not to lend*) ... Pete my watch: he

has broken it. 14. I wish you (*to send*) ... word as soon as you arrive. 15. I wish I (*not to have*) ... to do my homework every day. 16. I wish you (*to go*) ... skiing with me yesterday: I had such a good time!

**Ex. 265. Change the following sentences, using “I wish...”**

1. It's a pity you are not with us these days. 2. My friend regrets not having entered the university. 3. He was sorry not to have enough time to finish his test paper. 4. It's a pity we shan't be able to reach home before tea-time. 5. I'm sorry I made you upset by telling you this news. 6. What a pity you don't know enough physics. 7. Unfortunately they won't return before Christmas. 8. The student was sorry he had not studied the material better and had shown such a poor knowledge at the examination. 9. It's a pity that you didn't send for us last night.

**Ex. 266. Put the verb into the correct form.**

1. I feel sick. I wish (*I, not, eat*) ... so mush cake. 2. I'm fed up with this rain. I wish (*it, stop*) ... raining. 3. It's a difficult question. I wish (*I, know*) ... the answer. 4. I should have listened to you. I wish (*I, take*) ... your advice. 5. I wish (*Katy, be*) ... here. She'd be able to help us. 6. Aren't they ready yet? I wish (*they, hurry up*) ... . 7. It would be nice to stay here. I wish (*we, not, have*) ... to go now. 8. When we were in Madrid last year, we didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see. I wish (*we, have*) ... more time. 9. It's freezing today. I wish (*it, not, be*) ... so cold. I hate cold weather. 10. What's her name again? I wish (*I, can*) ... remember her name. 11. What I said was stupid. I wish (*I, not, say*) ... anything. 12. (*in a car*) You're driving too fast. I wish (*you, slow down*) ... a bit. 13. It was a terrible film. I wish (*we, not, go*) ... to see it. 14. You're always tired. I wish (*you, not, go*) ... to bed so late.

**Ex. 267. Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.**

**Example.** I'd prefer you not to wear jeans to the office.

***I'd rather you didn't wear jeans to the office.***

1. We won't get there on time without taking a taxi.
2. “I wouldn't go swimming on a day like this, if I were you, Tom.”
3. Although she had twisted her ankle, Sally still won the race.
4. Mike enjoys playing golf more than I do.
5. I regret selling my car.

6. Nobody has cut the lawn for weeks.
7. I'm sure Dick didn't mean to offend you.
8. Have you got a smaller size than this?
9. Would you like to go out for a drink?

**Ex. 268. Choose the correct variant.**

1. The new computer system ... next month.  
*A. is been installed B. is be installed C. is being installed*
2. Who ... was coming to see me this morning?  
*A. you said B. did you say*  
*C. did you say that D. you did say*
3. I always associate ... .  
*A. red wine B. red wine by France*  
*C. French red wine D. red wine with France*
4. I remembered ... the race.  
*A. the horse's winning B. the horse to win*  
*C. the horse winning D. the horse's to win*
5. The suspect confessed ... .  
*A. his crime the police B. the police his crime*  
*C. his crime to the police*
6. She reassured me that she ... the card.  
*A. had posted B. has posted C. posted D. posts*
7. They directed that the building ... .  
*A. is be pulled down B. to be pulled down*  
*C. should be pulled down*
8. Many leading members of the opposition party ..... to justify the decision.  
*A. have tried B. has tried C. tries*
9. The company owns ... in the city centre.  
*A. a cars park B. several cars parks C. a car park*
10. Against her parents' wishes, she wants to be ... .  
*A. the journalist B. journalist*  
*C. a journalist D. journalists*

**Ex. 269. Linking words. Look at the sentence and the three words below it. Decide which word completes each sentence.**

1. I spent several years in Spain, \_\_\_\_\_ I never learnt to speak Spanish.  
*and despite yet*

2. She found the job very tough. \_\_\_\_\_ she stayed at the company and was finally promoted.  
*And* *Nevertheless* *Though*
3. They went to the beach \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.  
*although* *and* *despite*
4. He spent several years in Finland \_\_\_\_\_ then moved to Poland.  
*and* *despite* *however*
5. He never went to university, \_\_\_\_\_ getting top marks at school.  
*although* *in spite of* *nevertheless*
6. She has recovered from the accident now \_\_\_\_\_ she still feels scared when she goes anywhere in a car.  
*but* *despite* *in spite of*
7. Even \_\_\_\_\_ Paul's brother lives in Brazil, he has never been there.  
*although* *despite* *though*
8. She apologized for taking the car without my permission. \_\_\_\_\_, I was still angry.  
*Also* *Despite* *However*
9. \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather, they still went ahead with the game.  
*Although* *Despite* *However*
10. Not only did he lose the business \_\_\_\_\_ he lost his house as well.  
*also* *and* *but*

**Ex. 270. What is the difference between:**

1. "Did you sleep well?" *and* "Have you slept well?"
2. "When I first met you, I already knew you." *and* "When I first met you, I had already known you.";
3. "Tell me when he comes." *and* "Tell me when he will come."
4. "They talked as I came in." *and* "They were talking as I came in."
5. "When does the train leave?" *and* "When's the train leaving?"
6. "How do you do?" *and* "How are you doing?"
7. "He's going out whenever I phone." *and* "He goes out whenever I phone."
8. "Do you sleep a lot?" *and* "Are you sleeping enough?"



**Ex. 271. Present Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous, Past Simple, Past Continuous**

**Underline the correct verb form A, B, C, or D to fill the spaces in the following sentences.**

- About 200 people ... outside the theatre for tickets when we got there.  
*A. were queuing    B. queued    C. have queued    D. queue*
- This time last week I ... to Berlin.  
*A. have driven    B. have drove  
C. was driving    D. have been driving*
- By the time the teacher arrived, the classroom was empty: the students ... .  
*A. left    B. had left    C. were leaving    D. have left*
- The witness claimed he ... the accused before.  
*A. did not see    B. hasn't seen  
C. wasn't seeing    D. hadn't seen*
- I ... a shower when the telephone rang.  
*A. had    B. was having    C. have had    D. have*
- She's changed a lot ... she left school.  
*A. for    B. since    C. during    D. after*
- I've been waiting in the rain ... hours!  
*A. during    B. since    C. for    D. from*
- ... I was coming home I met my old English teacher.  
*A. During    B. While    C. Before    D. Since*
- She was born twenty five years ... in a small town in Scotland.  
*A. before    B. since    C. over    D. ago*
- I've ... seen the film and I don't want to see it again.  
*A. yet    B. still    C. already    D. before*

**Ex. 272. Read the text and decide whether the sentences below are true, false, or not found in the text.**

- Three men were stopped by the police for trying to catch a train without tickets.  
*True / False / Not in the text*
- Barriers are mostly used to prevent crimes at East Putney station.  
*True / False / Not in the text*
- An old lady was attacked and injured near a railway station in London.  
*True / False / Not in the text*

4. The railway staff didn't let the pursuers make an emergency call.

*True / False / Not in the text*

5. According to the Judge, railway authorities deserve more attention in emergencies.

*True / False / Not in the text*

6. Terry Tailor confessed that he had robbed someone before.

*True / False / Not in the text*

**Ex. 273. Test your knowledge of the Past Simple and Past Perfect Tenses.**

*From Intermediate to Upper-Intermediate level*

**Part 1.**

Put the verbs into the correct tense. Use Past Simple or Past Perfect:

1. When he (*see*) his wife off at the station, he (*return*) home.
2. When he (*open*) the window the cat (*jump*) into the room.
3. When the play (*end*) the audience (*go*) home.
4. When he (*die*) he (*to be given*) a state funeral.
5. When he (*shut*) the window we (*open*) the door of the cage.
6. When he (*see*) all the pictures he (*say*) he (*be*) ready to leave.
7. When he (*see*) all the pictures he (*express*) amazement that one man should have painted so many.
8. When she (*know*) for a year she (*invite*) me to tea.
9. When I (*get*) to the shop, it (*close*).
10. When he (*come*) out of the shop ten minutes later the car (*be*) no longer there.
11. When I (*read*) the letter, I (*start*) to cry.
12. I (*look*) out before I (*go*) to bed and (*see*) a man standing on the pavement. When I (*get up*) the following morning he (*be*) still there, and I (*wonder*) whether he (*stay*) there all night or if he (*go*) away and (*come*) back.
13. He (*keep*) looking at her, wondering where he (*see*) her before.
14. Before we (*finish*) our meal he (*order*) us back to work.
15. Before we (*walk*) ten miles he (*complain*) of sore feet.
16. It (*be*) a very expensive town. Before we (*be*) here a week we (*spend*) all our money.
17. I (*speak*) to Mr. Johnson before the meeting (*begin*).
18. Before the train (*arrive*), Susan (*manage*) to push away to the front of the crowd.

19. David (*eat*) Japanese food before, so he (*know*) what to order.
20. It (*be*) more than a month before I (*realise*) what (*happen*).

**Ex. 274. Test your knowledge of the Past Simple and Past Perfect Tenses.**

**Part 2.**

1. The police (*pay*) no attention to Clare's complaint because she (*phone*) them so many times before.
2. The train (*leave*) five minutes before I (*get*) to the station.
3. I (*know*) I (*do*) well in my exams even before I (*receive*) the official results.
4. Inspector Gorse (*be*) in touch with Thames Valley Police six months before professor Dowson (*disappear*) because the Professor's wife Jean (*write*) to him, accusing her husband of plotting to murder her. And now it was the Professor who (*disappear*). Gorse was considering what his next step should be when the phone rang. It was Sergeant Adams from Thames Valley. A fisherman (*discover*) a body in the Thames near Reading, and it (*fit*) the description of the Professor.
5. Brenda (*leave*) before I (*have*) time to talk to her.
6. He (*refuse*) to go till he (*see*) all the pictures.
7. He (*not wait*) till we (*finish*) our meal.
8. I (*not realise*) that I (*leave*) my umbrella on the bus until it (*start*) to rain
9. The train (*grind*) to a halt at a small station miles from London, and it (*become*) apparent that the engine (*break*) down. Everyone (*get*) their cases down from the luggage racks, and we (*wait*) on the platform in the freezing wind for hours until the next train (*turn*) up.
10. By 1984, we (*wait*) seven years for an answer.
11. By the time the train (*arrive*), Susan (*manage*) to push away to the front of the crowd.
12. By the time Sheila (*get*) back, Chris (*go*).
13. After the will (*be read*) there (*be*) angry exclamations.
14. After we (*pass*) our exams, we (*go*) to celebrate.
15. I (*arrive*) in England in July. I (*be told*) that England (*be*) shrouded in fog all year round, so I (*be*) quite surprised to find that it was raining. If I (*want*) fog, he said, I (*come*) at a quite the wrong time.

16. A woman (**come**) in with a baby, who she (**say**) just (**swallow**) a safety pin.
17. It (**be**) now 6 p.m.; his wife usually (**bring**) him sandwiches at lunch time, but today for some reason she (**not come**).
18. It was June 1991. Ann and Michael just (**get**) married.
19. Jeremy was 21 and he (**be**) in a wheelchair since he was ten.
20. We (**buy**) our tickets and five minutes later the train (**arrive**).

**Ex. 275. Test your knowledge of the Past Simple and Past Perfect Tenses.**

**Part 3.**

1. Jane was then 28. She (**start**) working for the company when she (**be**) 18. She quickly (**climb**) the career ladder and (**be**) now the youngest managing director the company ever (**appoint**).
2. Jane started working when she (**be**) 18. She quickly (**climb**) the career ladder and (**become**) the youngest ever managing director at the age of 28.
3. I suddenly (**remember**) that I (**forget**) my keys.
4. Laura (**miss**) the party because no-one (**tell**) her about it.
5. Tony (**admit**) that he (**hit**) the other car but said that he (**not damage**).
6. The police (**get**) to Clara's house as fast as they could, but the burglars (**disappear**).
7. I (**not know**) you (**buy**) a new car.
8. 'What a terrible day!' thought Lucy. Everything (**go**) wrong! "Excuse me, but this seat is mine." "I'm sorry, I (**not realise**) that you were sitting here."
9. Jill (**not eat**) all day, so she (**be**) really hungry at this point.
10. Everyone was staring at me. What I (**do**) wrong?
11. Nobody bothered to tell me that the school (**decide**) to have a special holiday that Friday.
12. Peter (**offer**) me another drink but I (**decide**) I (**drink**) enough.
13. Whenever Marion (**find**) a job, there (**be**) someone who (**know**) that she (**be**) to prison.
14. I (**feel**) awful after lunch. I (**eat**) too much.
15. The explanation was simple. In 1781 HMS Sovereign on her way back from India (**sight**) an empty boat drifting off the African coast.
16. Once I (**read**) the manual, I (**find**) I could use the computer quite well.

---

---

## Intermediate tests

---

---

### INTERMEDIATE GRAMMAR TEST 1

**Ex. 276. Write the correct answer in the gap provided.**

- Alex didn't come to see the film last night because he ... it before.  
a) saw                      b) had seen      c) has seen      d) was seen
- A cold wind ... for the last three days.  
a) has been blowing      b) blows  
c) is blowing              d) blew
- I ... as ill as I do now for a long time.  
a) wasn't feeling              b) haven't been feeling  
c) didn't feel                  d) haven't felt
- I wish I ... younger.  
a) had been                      b) would be  
c) were                              d) have been
- She said she ... to me, but she didn't.  
a) would have written      b) will have written  
c) would write                  d) will write
- If he ... lucky, he could get the job.  
a) is                                  b) had been  
c) would be                      d) would have been
- She told him that if he ... his promise, she ... speak to him again.  
a) break — would never      b) break — will never  
c) broke — will never          d) broke — would never
- You ... a six-month contract when you are offered a permanent position elsewhere. What will you do?  
a) have just started          b) had started  
c) were starting                  d) started
- I'll see you in August when I ... back.  
a) will come                      b) came  
c) will have come                  d) come

10. They claimed they ... the law.  
*a) haven't broken      b) were not breaking*  
*c) hadn't braken      d) wouldn't breaking*
11. My friend ... when the lesson started.  
*a) hasn't arrived      b) wasn't arrived*  
*c) hadn't arrived      d) wasn't arriving*
12. He ... on the bank fishing when he ... a man's hat floating down the river.  
*a) has sat — had seen      b) was sitting — saw*  
*c) sat — was seeing      d) was sitting — has seen*
13. July 10th is my wedding anniversary. Next month, my husband and I will ... for twenty years.  
*a) marry      b) have married*  
*c) be married      d) have been married*
14. Who ... the boss tell him that?  
*a) did hear      b) does hear      c) hears      d) heard*
15. Something extremely strange ... yesterday while we were out jogging.  
*a) was happened      b) happened*  
*c) has been happening      d) has happened*
16. I ... this letter around for days and haven't even looked at it.  
*a) carry      b) have been carrying*  
*c) am carrying      d) was carrying*
17. Ouch! I ... my thumb!  
*a) have cut      b) am to cut      c) had cut      d) had been cut*
18. I ... the flowers yesterday morning.  
*a) have been watering      b) watered*  
*c) have watered      d) did watered*
19. As soon as you ... that, I'd like you to go to bed.  
*a) did      b) will do      c) will have done      d) have done*
20. By then I ... my driving test, I hope.  
*a) pass      b) will have passed*  
*c) will be passed      d) have passed*

## INTERMEDIATE GRAMMAR TEST 2

**Ex. 277. Write the correct answer in the gap provided.**

1. ... the most popular form of fiction writing.  
*A. Novel is      B. The novels are      C. Novels are*

2. Did you buy ... when you went shopping?  
A. *any tomato*      B. *any waters*      C. *any tomatoes*
3. Following the flood, ... in the area ... major repair work.  
A. *each of building ... needs*      B. *every building ... need*  
C. *each buildings ... need*      D. *every building ... needs*
4. I've given ... to Bob.  
A. *all them*      B. *all of them*      C. *them of all*
5. The newspaper is owned by the Mearson Group, ... is Sir James Bex.  
A. *which chairman*      B. *whose chairman*  
C. *who chairman*      D. *chairman*
6. ... at the party, we saw Ruth standing alone.  
A. *Arrived*      B. *We arrived*  
C. *Arriving*      D. *We are arriving*
7. A: "I don't suppose there'll be any seats left."  
B: "No, I ..."  
A. *don't suppose*      B. *suppose*      C. *suppose not*
8. The report is very critical and is clearly ... .  
A. *intended to be*      B. *intended to*  
C. *intended*      D. *intend to be*
9. I asked Francis to clean the car, and he did ... .  
A. *a well job*      B. *the job good*      C. *the job well*
10. He was busy ... his homework.  
A. *doing*      B. *to do*  
C. *that he was doing*      D. *he was doing*

### INTERMEDIATE GRAMMAR TEST 3

**Ex. 278.** Put the following sentences in the correct tense, making all the necessary changes. Write the complete sentences.

1. They (*play*) when I (*see*) them.
2. You ever (*meet*) a famous actor?
3. They (*sell*) their old car two years ago.
4. Tom's sister (*go*) to school on Sundays?
5. They not (*have to*) work a lot last year.
6. He (*have*) some problems for years.
7. I (*meet*) her before she (*become*) Miss Universe.
8. Yesterday I (*watch*) TV for hours.
9. You said you (*help*) a lot of people in the war.
10. I (*not come*) to work if I (*have*) a cold yesterday.
11. I thought it (*will*) be funny.
12. He said he (*visit*) Mary the following day.
13. Tom said he (*live*) in England since 1975.
14. If I had a lot of money, I not (*have to*) work.

15. I not (*miss*) my train if I had left earlier. 16. If you (*tell*) me the truth, I would help you. 17. Tom will help you if you (*ask*) him. 18. We were very tired, because we (*play*) tennis all morning.

#### INTERMEDIATE GRAMMAR TEST 4

**Ex. 279.** Complete the sentences below with one word, when necessary. Write “—” in the space if nothing is missing.

1. My pen is better ... any other pen. 2. How ... bread have we got? 3. There isn't ... milk in the fridge. 4. We must buy a ... carrots. 5. Mary can swim very ... She always wins. 6. ... do you spell your name? 7. I play ... piano in the afternoon. 8. He is speaking very ... . I can't hear him. 9. My birthday is ... 22nd March. 10. ... does your father look like? 11. I live ... 25 Lime Road. 12. Tom ... run very fast. 13. Mike is a DJ; he works ... night. 14. We play ... football. 15. My house is ... the church and the bookshop. 16. Barbara is the ... beautiful girl in my class. 17. I met ... Jane in April. 18. We don't like Maths, it's ... popular than Physics.

#### INTERMEDIATE GRAMMAR TEST 5

**Ex. 280.** Put the verbs in the following sentences in the correct tense. Write the complete sentences in the space provided.

1. He said he (*wait*) ... since 4. 2. You ever (*visit*) ... Madame Tussaud's? 3. If they (*arrive*) ... on time, they'll call us. 4. While I (*watch*) ... TV, my brother (*play*) ... the piano. 5. I wish we (*miss*) the bus yesterday. 6. Jane would help you if you (*ask*) ... her. 7. I (*buy*) ... this house two months ago. 8. Tom should (*open*) ... the door when he saw me. 9. I wish I (*have*) ... more money; now I can't buy this dress. 10. If you (*listen*) ... to him, you would have learnt a lot. 11. Mary said they (*go*) ... to Italy next summer. 12. I am not used to (*work*) ... hard.

#### INTERMEDIATE GRAMMAR TEST 6

**Ex. 281.** Put the verbs in the following sentences in the correct tense or form. Write the complete sentences.

1. You (*cannot see*) ... Jack yesterday. He is out of town. 2. If you had been there, we (*have*) ... a good time. 3. Did you really let



your son (*go*) ... there? 4. I spent a lot of time (*try*) ... to make a profit. 5. The letters are here. I didn't remember (*post*) ... them. 6. I am too happy (*listen*) ... to this sad music. 7. I was embarrassed to see you (*kiss*) ... my wife. 8. My keys aren't on the table. But I remember (*put*) ... them there. 9. By the time you (*finish*) ... work, I (*be*) ... at the cinema for hours. 10. He (*have*) ... lunch tomorrow from 11 a.m. to 2 p.m. 11. I thought you had forgotten (*come*) ... . I (*wait*) ... for you for two hours. 12. Why hasn't this letter been written yet? It should (*write*) ... yesterday.

### INTERMEDIATE GRAMMAR TEST 7

**Ex. 282. Choose the correct variant to fill in the gaps:**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ this word in English?

- |                    |
|--------------------|
| a) How do you call |
| b) How do you say  |
| c) What do you say |
| d) How is called   |

2. What \_\_\_\_\_ at the ABC cinema tonight?

- |                  |
|------------------|
| a) is played     |
| b) is on         |
| c) is playing    |
| d) are they play |

3. Here are your shoes. I \_\_\_\_\_ them.

- |                           |
|---------------------------|
| a) have just cleaned      |
| b) have just been cleaned |
| c) did just clean         |
| d) just cleaned           |

4. I hope you know that you \_\_\_\_\_ come with me if you don't want to.

- |                  |
|------------------|
| a) can't         |
| b) mustn't       |
| c) don't have to |
| d) don't need    |

5. “ \_\_\_\_\_ ” “No, her eyes are sore, that’s why they are so red.”

- |                         |
|-------------------------|
| a) Has Sue crying?      |
| b) Did Sue cry?         |
| c) Had Sue cried?       |
| d) Has Sue been crying? |

6. “How long \_\_\_\_\_ your new secretary?” “Since 2001.”

- |                          |
|--------------------------|
| a) have you known        |
| b) did you know          |
| c) have you been knowing |
| d) do you know           |

7. He asked me if I \_\_\_\_\_ to swim across the river.

- |             |
|-------------|
| a) was able |
| b) be able  |
| c) could    |
| d) am able  |

8. I was just wondering if she \_\_\_\_\_ about the tragedy.

- |                  |
|------------------|
| a) had told      |
| b) has told      |
| c) told          |
| d) had been told |

9. I’m glad to hear that at least today’s \_\_\_\_\_ cheerful.

- |                 |
|-----------------|
| a) news is      |
| b) news are     |
| c) the news is  |
| d) the news are |

10. \_\_\_\_\_ wanted to see you yesterday.

- |                     |
|---------------------|
| a) One of my friend |
| b) One my friend    |
| c) A friend of mine |
| d) A friend of me   |

11. "She said she had met my friend two weeks before."  
" \_\_\_\_\_ she?"

a) Has
b) Did
c) Hadn't
d) Didn't

12. He used \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes, but he doesn't any more.

a) smoke
b) to smoking
c) smoking
d) to smoke

13. I'd have collected the money if he \_\_\_\_\_ asked me.

a) has
b) had
c) would have
d) —

14. While everyone else \_\_\_\_\_, she \_\_\_\_\_ quietly in the kitchen.

a) laughed	cried
b) was laughing	was crying
c) was laughed	cried
d) laughed	was cried

15. She will have \_\_\_\_\_ free time from now on.

a) many
b) lot of
c) few
d) no

16. He wanted to buy 4 \_\_\_\_\_ eggs and 3 \_\_\_\_\_.

a) dozens	hundreds sheeps
b) dozens	hundred sheeps
c) dozen	hundred sheep
d) dozen	hundreds sheeps

17. The problem is \_\_\_\_\_ in summer.

- |                    |
|--------------------|
| a) much worse      |
| b) much more worse |
| c) much more bad   |
| d) much worst      |

18. She'll tell us \_\_\_\_\_ .

- |                                  |
|----------------------------------|
| a) 11 o'clock in this morning    |
| b) at 11 o'clock this morning    |
| c) on 11 o'clock this morning    |
| d) on this morning at 11 o'clock |

19. Is he married or \_\_\_\_\_ ?

- |           |
|-----------|
| a) alone  |
| b) lonely |
| c) single |
| d) free   |

20. What are you going to do when you \_\_\_\_\_ school?

- |             |
|-------------|
| a) finished |
| b) ended    |
| c) leave    |
| d) complete |

### INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY TEST 1

**Ex. 283. Make or Do? Choose the correct answer.**

1. I think you're (**making / doing**) ... a big mistake. 2. We need to (**make / do**) ... a plan. 3. Harry is bringing something to drink and I'm going to (**make / do**) ... a cake. 4. You're more likely to (**make / do**) ... harm than good. 5. I'm going to (**make / do**) ... you an offer you can't refuse. 6. Can I (**make / do**) ... a suggestion? 7. You need to (**make / do**) ... some more work. 8. I hate (**making / doing**) ... the housework. 9. I hate (**making / doing**) ... the beds. 10. I like (**making / doing**) ... the cooking. 11. I think we should (**make / do**) ... an exception in this case. 12. Can you (**make / do**) ... me a favour?

13. He's not the sort of person you can (**make / do**) ... business with.  
14. You must be quiet. You mustn't (**make / do**) ... a noise. 15. It's not what we want. We'll just have to (**make / do**) ... the best of it.  
16. You're always (**making / doing**) ... excuses for him. 17. Thanks for (**making / doing**) ... me a good turn. 18. Do you mind if I (**make / do**) ... a phone call? 19. The company is (**making / doing**) ... huge profits. 20. You can't (**make / do**)... much money as an English teacher.

## INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY TEST 2

**Ex. 284.** Complete the following text with a word in each gap, when necessary; write “ — ” if nothing is missing.

Rome

As a rule, Italians are very conscious ... their dress and have a great sense ... style. Casual dress is fine ... most occasions, but a suit and tie are recommended business meetings. ... summer, locals will not be seen wearing shorts ... the city. When visiting the Vatican or any major cathedral, men should wear long pants and women skirts or long pants. Sleeveless shirts and shorts are not permitted ... churches and the Vatican, including ... the Vatican museums.

Tipping is not mandatory. ... times a service charge (*servizio*) is included ... your restaurant bill. This should not be confused ... the cover charge (*coperta*), which is a charge ... bread and table settings. If the service charge is included and you are pleased ... the service, it's customary to leave an additional 5 %; if the service charge is not included, leave a 10 % tip. ... the porter and cleaning lady of the hotel you should give ... 10,000 lire, ... room service ... 5,000 lire. Tipping ... taxis is not obligatory either, but 1,000 to 2,000 lire is usually given ... the driver.

Amsterdam

There are no restrictions ... dress, although the Dutch are fairly conservative dressers themselves. Normally men wear suits and ties ... business meetings ... women wear equivalent business apparel — but good-looking, casual attire works fine ... most other situations. A sweater comes ... handy ... night, even ... summer, and a windbreaker or coat will be needed ... mid September ... early June. Pack a small folding umbrella and a rain cape.

The Dutch government requires ... that all taxes and service charges be included ... the published prices of hotels, restaurants,

cafes, discos, nightclubs, hairdressers, beauty parlors and sightseeing companies. The 10 % service charge (tip) is always included ... the bill. Additional tipping is appreciated if the service is attentive; people round their bill ... anywhere ... a guilder or two ... an appropriate, somewhat larger figure. This should be done when paying, and small change should be left ... the table.

### INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY TEST 3

**Ex. 285. Complete the text below using the correct word or expression from the list below.**

At six thirteen a.m. on Friday morning Lucy Angkatell's big blue eyes opened upon another day and as always, she was at once (1) ... awake and began immediately to deal with the problems conjured up by her incredibly active mind. (2) ... urgently the need of consultation and conversation, and selecting for the purpose her young cousin, Midge Hardcastle, (3) ... arrived at The Hollow the night before, Lady Angkatell slipped quickly out of bed and went along the passage to Midge's room. Since she was a woman of rapid thought processes, Lady Angkatell, (4) ... was her invariable custom, commenced the conversation in her own (5) ..., supplying Midge's answers out of her own fertile imagination.

The conversation was in full (6) ... when Lady Angkatell flung open Midge's door.

"And so, darling, you really must agree that the weekend is going to present difficulties!"

"Eh? Hwah!" Midge grunted inarticulately, (7) ... thus abruptly from a satisfying and deep sleep.

Lady Angkatell crossed to the window, opening the shutters and jerking up the blind with a brisk movement, letting in the pale light of a September dawn.

"Birds!" she observed, peering with kindly pleasure (8) ... the pane. "So sweet."

"What?"

"Well, at any (9) ... , the weather isn't going to present difficulties. It looks (10) ... it had set in fine. That's something. Because if a lot of discordant personalities are boxed up indoors, I'm sure you will agree with me that it makes it ten times worse."

*(Agatha Christie)*

1	a) full	b) fast	c) hard	d) wide
2	a) To feel	b) As she felt	c) Feeling	d) Felt
3	a) —	b) who would have	c) that had	d) who had
4	a) since	b) for	c) as	d) such
5	a) head	b) mind	c) brain	d) fantasy
6	a) swing	b) stretch	c) time	d) length
7	a) rised	b) raised	c) aroused	d) rose
8	a) through	b) into	c) beyond	d) across
9	a) rate	b) way	c) case	d) pace
10	a) likely	b) as though	c) as just	d) if

## INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY TEST 4

### *Few clues in Little Mermaid whodunit*

**Ex. 286. Complete the text using the words below.**

Danish police have been left scratching their heads as they hunt for the vandals who decapitated the Little Mermaid.

Few clues have emerged about the second \_\_\_\_ in 35 years of the famous statue on Copenhagen's , which has shocked the Danish \_\_\_\_ and worried tourism .

Frogmen scouring the \_\_\_\_ near the statue failed to find the Little Mermaid's bronze \_\_\_\_ and two youths on roller skates seen near the \_\_\_\_ early on Tuesday morning have not responded to police \_\_\_\_ to help in the investigation.

"I am afraid that the latest \_\_\_\_ on the Little Mermaid can back-fire on our\_\_\_\_," said Bernhard Joergensen, director of the Wonderful Copenhagen tourism .

"It is important for a tourist city to have a \_\_\_\_ like the Eiffel Tower in Paris and London's Big Ben."

Based on the \_\_\_\_ by Hans Christian Andersen about the Sea King's daughter who must wait on her \_\_\_\_ for 300 years before entering the \_\_\_\_ of humans and marrying her prince, the Little Mermaid attracts almost one million tourists a year.

The statue was found severed at the \_\_\_\_ by a saw or grinding machine after an anonymous call to a local television cameraman before \_\_\_\_ on Tuesday.

Police are working on a \_\_\_ that the beheading was the work of the same person who sawed off a 19th century galleon \_\_\_ at a naval base in Copenhagen just before Christmas.

The severed figurehead was found in the ladies' toilets of a department store on Tuesday, giving rise to police \_\_\_ a mentally disturbed woman may be behind the two decapitations.

- |  |
|--|
| 1. attack 2. beheading 3. dawn 4. fairytale 5. figurehead<br>6. harbor 7. head 8. landmark 9. neck 10. officials 11. organization 12. public 13. requests 14. rock 15. suspicions 16. symbol 17. theory 18. tourism 19. waterfront 20. world |
|--|

### INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY TEST 5

**Ex. 287. Complete the following text with the words below (use only half the words)**

If the claims of the camera makers are to be believed, then every picture taken should be a winner. Automated film transport takes the film into the camera and then winds it on between frames; auto-exposure ensures “living colours and a perfect balance of tones” no \_\_\_ what the lighting conditions; while autofocus means you will never have to look at a photograph ever again in your life. Strange, then, that so many people express \_\_\_ when they see their prints back from the processor.

The \_\_\_ for this is that good photography has little to do with the type of camera you use. It's just as easy to take a bad picture with an excellent camera as it is to take a good picture with even the most basic \_\_\_ of equipment.

The tendency of many automated camera systems is to encourage users to confine their photography to the types of situation the auto-matics \_\_\_ with best. This often means centrally placed subjects the autofocus cannot confuse, with the sun positioned directly behind the photographer. \_\_\_, taking good photographs means \_\_\_ and then making the most of whatever it is your subject has to offer.

The first part of this magic formula means really looking at your subject before pressing the shutter. Look out, for example, for features to the side or in the \_\_\_ that would be better included or, just as important, excluded.



\_\_\_\_\_ whether your subject is looking directly into the sunlight and is squinting as a result. A slight change of camera position might be all that is needed to improve your composition or finding some shade might be the answer.

- a) realising b) dizzy c) trouble d) piece e) background,  
 f) reason g) argument h) control i) matter j) however,  
 k) although l) underground m) part n) recognising o) check,  
 p) cope q) solve r) disappointment s) fuzzy t) disturbance

### INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY TEST 6

**Ex. 288.** Complete the following sentences with the words in the right column in the correct forms. You may have to use some words more than once.

1	I couldn't sleep on my ____; it was very narrow.	A. amenity
2	This year we've seen a ____ rise in prices.	
3	I took her to a ____ restaurant.	B. share
4	He had ____ views about the problem.	
5	The ____ for last year was as low as 14 per cent.	C. berth
6	Are you going to ____ my taxi?	
7	He showed no ____ of interest in us.	D. personnel
8	When I was a little boy I had a ____ that one day I'd be famous.	E. pent-up
9	There was a(n) ____ of trees and bushes around the farm.	
10	A lot of old people suffer ____ discomfort each winter.	F. steady
11	We ____ the washing-up at home.	
12	Do you ____ a cup of coffee?	G. extreme
13	The show ____ large crowds of people this year.	
14	We couldn't do the job because we hadn't got the right ____ for it.	H. abundance
15	This is a first-class hotel, with every ____.	
16	There were ____ of light behind the trees.	I. marvel
17	I quite ____ Jane; I thought she was beautiful.	

18	This is the only thing we have in ____.	J. glimmer
19	She didn't really ____ me, but other men liked her.	K. annually
20	The reactions were the product of ____ anger.	
21	His hand was not ____ enough.	L. fancy
22	"I've never seen so much money!" ____ Fred .	
23	Our fans ____ theirs; only our voice was heard.	M. attract
24	His eyes ____ as he looked at the woman.	
25	It helps a lot when a father does his ____ at home.	N. outnumber
26	A lot of tourists visit this sight ____.	
27	I was very bad at ____ at school.	O. figure
28	____ seeing you here!	
29	Their methods seem ____ to me.	
30	We had to go to the ____ north of the country to find him.	

### INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY TEST 7

**Ex. 289.** Match the definitions with the words below. Write the letter of the correct word in the box in front of the definition.

1		come out	a. sow
2		start again	b. remain
3		profit	c. occur
4		turn over the soil	d. capsize
5		plant seeds in the ground	e. predict
6		walk in a military manner	f. plough
7		stay on	g. chase
8		suddenly think of something	h. emerge
9		turn over	i. benefit
10		become worse or smaller	j. supply
11		say something will happen	k. resume
12		give enough of something	l. limp
13		run after somebody	m. march
14		walk in an uneven way	n. decline

## INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY TEST 8

**Ex. 290.** Eponyms are words that came into the language from the name of a person or a place. Read the definitions below and match them to the eponyms on the right. Write the correct letters in the boxes.

1	British policeman	<i>a. pantaloon</i>
2	tissue paper used as a handkerchief	<i>b. spa</i>
3	when people decide to completely ignore somebody or something, to show that they dislike them	<i>c. limerick</i>
4	a closely fitting piece of clothing usually worn when doing exercise or dancing	<i>d. bluestocking</i>
5	vacuum cleaner	<i>e. bobby</i>
6	when angry people kill a person without a trial	<i>f. leotard</i>
7	a short, humorous poem; often nonsense	<i>g. Shangri-la</i>
8	a game played by two or four people with rackets, on a court with a net	<i>h. badminton</i>
9	long trousers with very wide legs	<i>i. boycott</i>
10	the spirit or soul	<i>j. lynch</i>
11	an imaginary, wonderful land; paradise	<i>k. psyche</i>
12	a place where water with minerals in it comes out of the water	<i>l. biro</i>
13	a woman who is interested in intellectual ideas	<i>m. Hoover</i>
14	ballpoint pen	<i>n. Kleenex</i>
15	swimming dress worn by women; has two very small parts	<i>o. bikini</i>
16	long rubber boots	<i>p. Wellington</i>

## INTERMEDIATE TEST 9

### Accuracy test

**Ex. 291.** Decide whether the following sentences are correct or incorrect grammatically.

1	Jane asked me if I would tell her the truth.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
2	She shouldn't have broken that glass.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
3	According to me, Jack is not very clever.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
4	They can have opened the window.	a) Correct b) Incorrect

5	But I did do my homework!	a) Correct b) Incorrect
6	Where is the book what I got for my birthday?	a) Correct b) Incorrect
7	All I can do is to call the police.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
8	We were to have tea here.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
9	I don't like tea, too.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
10	Jane suggested to go to the theatre.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
11	Would you mind to tell me your name, please?	a) Correct b) Incorrect
12	My mother who is a librarian works a lot.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
13	Would you rather I did it?	a) Correct b) Incorrect
14	Try as he might, he won't find it.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
15	I was waiting for you but you never came.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
16	Walking in the garden it began to rain.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
17	We have bought a sixth packet.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
18	She is a most energetic woman.	a) Correct b) Incorrect
19	Tom suggested that Mary go to university	a) Correct b) Incorrect
20	Never have I seen such a beautiful girl	a) Correct b) Incorrect

### INTERMEDIATE READING TEST 10

**Ex. 292. Read the text below and then choose the correct answer.**

Three men chased a mugger into East Putney station, London, after he punched and kicked an elderly woman, but were turned back at the barrier because they had no tickets, it was stated at the Central Criminal Court yesterday.

They were refused use of a telephone to call the police, so they bought platform tickets, went into the station and caught the at-

tacker, a youth of 17. One of the pursuers had to go outside to make a 999 call.

Mr. Justice Milford Stevenson said the incident deserved to be brought to the attention of the railway authorities. He sent the mugger to jail for five years.

Terry Tailor earlier had admitted assaulting Mrs. Margaret Percy, aged 67, with intent to rob her.

## UPPER-INTERMEDIATE TEST 1

**Ex. 293. Read the text below and choose the best answer from the variants after the text to fill the gaps.**

### A Bad Day

Yesterday I had a really bad day. I (1) ... at half past five, because I had to leave home early. I had to take my car to the garage to (2) ... . I couldn't (3) ... the children to school, because she had already arranged to (4) ... that morning before work. Having to (5) ... that early (6) ... , but as you can see, I couldn't help it. Of course, they weren't very happy, to say the least. Then, they (7) ... them eggs for breakfast, which took quite long, because our cooker is not in perfect order. I should have (8) ... long ago, but somehow I never had the time. My wife started complaining again when she saw me struggling with the cooker that I can never (9) ... . It just (10) ... , but it didn't improve anything. Then I spilt some hot oil on my hand, which (11) ... round the kitchen, cursing and banging on everything. We were running short of time and I had to (12) ... their breakfast in a hurry. The weather forecast warned us that it would be cold so I (13) ... two pullovers. Jenny couldn't find her favourite blue pullover and it (14) ... I (15) ... the whole wardrobe upside down to find it, but of course it was no good. We were running twenty minutes behind schedule when we left the house. In the car, Tony asked me if I had (16) ... . This might (17) ... that I'm a careless father, but I hadn't. I told him that I had (18) ... to the watchmaker's, but it wouldn't be ready till Friday. Then Jenny tried to (19) ... faster because she enjoys speed. We were late anyway, so I obliged. But only till the next corner, where I (20) ... by a police car. They (21) ... a breath test and fined me for speeding. When I arrived at the office, I found that my assistant hadn't been able to (22) ... my letters. That was the end. I decided I had had enough. I simply (23) ... me a

cup of coffee and told her to (24) ... for that day. I sat down to my coffee and spent the rest of the morning reading the papers.

1. _____	a) made the kids to get up	b) got the kids get up
	c) made the kids get up	d) had the kids to get up
2. _____	a) have serviced it	b) have it serviced
	c) serviced it	d) make it serviced
3. _____	a) get my wife take	b) make my wife to take
	c) get my wife to take	d) get my wife taken
4. _____	a) have her hair dyed	b) have had her hair dyed
	c) have dyed her hair	d) have her hair to dye
5. _____	a) have the children to get up	b) get the children get up
	c) make the children to get up	d) make the children get up
6. _____	a) made me feel guilty	b) made me to feel guilty
	c) got me feel guilty	d) had me to feel guilty
7. _____	a) got me fry	b) made me fry
	c) had me to fry	d) made me to fry
8. _____	a) had it reparaire	b) got repaired it
	c) made it repaired	d) had repaired it
9. _____	a) have done anything	b) make anything do
	c) get anything to do	d) have anything done
10. _____	a) got me feel bad	b) made me feel bad
	c) had me feel bad	d) made me to feel bad
11. _____	a) had me running	b) had me to run
	c) got me run	d) made me running
12. _____	a) get the kids finish to finish	b) make the kids
	c) make the kids finish	d) have the kids to finish
13. _____	a) made the children put on	b) made the children to put on
	c) had the children to put on	d) got the children put on
14. _____	a) made her to cry	b) made her crying
	c) got her cry	d) made her cry
15. _____	a) got Tony turning	b) got Tony turn
	c) got Tony to turn	d) had Tony to turn
16. _____	a) had his watch repaired	b) made his watch repair
	c) got his watch repair	d) got his watch repairing

17. _____	a) make you to believe c) have you believing	b) get you believe d) make you believe
18. _____	a) had my assistant take it c) made my assistant to take it	b) had my assistant to take it d) got my assistant take it
19. _____	a) get me to drive c) had me to drive	b) get me drive d) had me driving
20. _____	a) was forced to stop c) was forced stop	b) was forced stopping d) was got stopped
21. _____	a) got me taking c) had me to take	b) forced me take d) had me take
22. _____	a) get the typist type c) make the typist to type	b) get the typist to type d) have the typist to type
23. _____	a) had my secretary to bring c) got my secretary to bring	b) made my secretary to bring d) got my secretary bringing
24. _____	a) have cancelled all my meetings c) get all my meetings to cancel	b) get all my meetings cancel d) have all my meetings cancelled

## UPPER-INTERMEDIATE TEST 2

**Ex. 294. Choose the best answer to fill the gaps.**

- Each July we ... to Turkey for a holiday.  
A. *are going*                      B. *go*                      C. *were going*
- ... Robert lately?  
A. *Did you see*                      B. *Have you seen*  
C. *Do you see*                      D. *Are you seeing*
- ... until midnight last night.  
A. *I have been reading*      B. *I was reading*                      C. *I have read*
- She ... from flu when she was interviewed.  
A. *had been suffering*      B. *had suffered*                      C. *suffered*
- Wait here until I ... you.  
A. *will call*                      B. *am calling*  
C. *am going to call*                      D. *call*
- I ... with the performance, but I got flu the day before.  
A. *was to have helped*      B. *helped*                      C. *had helped*
- I ... happy to see him, but I didn't have time,  
A. *will have been*      B. *would be will be*      C. *would have been*
- If I hadn't come along at that moment, Jim ... the one arrested instead of the real thief.

- A. might have been B. can't have been C. can have been*
9. You ... whisper. Nobody can hear us.  
*A. needn't B. mustn't C. need to*
10. I could ... much more for the painting if I'd sold it overseas.  
*A. have got B. get C. have D. has got*

### UPPER-INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY EXERCISE 1

**Ex. 295. Complete the following sentences with names of colours.**

1. Our company has lost a lot of money recently and now we're in the \_\_. 2. My mother just loves gardening; she has \_\_ fingers. 3. When we heard the news, it was completely out of the \_\_. 4. Peter is so honest; he would never tell even a \_\_ lie. 5. When Jane saw Mary's new car, she was \_\_ with envy. 6. Congratulations! You've passed all your exams with flying \_\_! 7. The opposition brought up another \_\_ herring during the debate yesterday. 8. The teacher gave the boy a \_\_ look and went on. 9. When my son came after that fight with the other boys, he was \_\_ and \_\_ all over. 10. His extra-marital affairs have been discussed at length in the \_\_ press. 11. You know, Fred has always been the \_\_ sheep in the family. 12. We just can't get ahead because of all this \_\_ tape!

### UPPER-INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY EXERCISE 2

**Ex. 296. The two halves of the following proverbs have got mixed up. Match the endings on the right to the beginnings on the left. Write the correct letters in the boxes.**

1	You can lead a horse to water,	a. spoil the broth.
2	It's the early bird	b. shouldn't throw stones.
3	Too many cooks	c. the pounds will look after themselves.
4	Many hands	d. out of a molehill.
5	Those who live in glass houses	e. but you can't make him drink.
6	You cannot teach	f. in the mouth.
7	If you look after the pennies,	g. that catches the worm.
8	Don't make a mountain	h. and eat it.
9	Don't look a gift horse	i. an old dog new tricks.
10	You can't have your cake	j. make light work.



---

---

## WORD USAGE

---

---

English seems to have so many words that sound alike and more words that are frequently confused than any other language. In the following pages, you will find some of the more troublesome sets of words. See how well you can handle them.

Many words are easily confused. Some words sound the same but are spelled differently and have differently meanings. These are homonyms. *For example:*

- |   |
|---|
| 1. A full moon <i>shone</i> brightly last night.<br>The film was <i>shown</i> on TV.  |
| 2. Once we nail up this <i>board</i> , the total shed will be finished.<br>I was very <i>bored</i> during that long, rainy week.  |
| 3. The <i>pain</i> in my lower back increases during rainy weather.<br>Could you please replace the cracked <i>pane</i> of glass? |

Other words are confusing because they sound almost the same. *For example:*

- |   |
|---|
| 1. The legislators had an angry debate before <i>adopting</i> the policy on school funding. Since we moved from the West Coast to the Midwest, we've had <i>to adapt</i> to colder weather. |
| 2. The politician's <i>allusions</i> to his opponent's past errors in judgment were unnecessary.<br>In the story <i>The Christmas Carol</i> , Scrooge's visitors were <i>illusions</i> .    |
| 3. How do you think the current job action will <i>affect</i> management?<br>I think the <i>effect</i> will be that management will meet labor's demand.                                    |

In order to improve your understanding of easily confused words, study the following list. **Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary.**

### COMMONLY MISUSED WORDS.

**Ex. 297. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary**

1	I <b>accept / except</b> your apology. Everyone <b>accept / except</b> John may leave.
2	When visiting a foreign country, you must <b>adapt / adopt</b> yourself to the customs practiced there. The Greens plan to <b>adapt / adopt</b> several hard-to-place children.
3	Because of Michael's excellent <b>advice / advise</b> , Bob completed a successful deal.
4	Michael will <b>advice / advise</b> Bob to be daring.
5	The accident didn't <b>effect / affect</b> Thomas. The <b>effect / affect</b> on his brother, however, was great.
6	When you forget your medication, you <b>aggravate / annoy</b> your medical condition. Your forgetting <b>aggravates / annoys</b> me. я
7	Call me when you are <b>all ready / already</b> to go. By the time Sue arrived we had <b>all ready / already</b> finished dinner.
8	(Alright is not an acceptable word.) Is it <b>all right / alright</b> to leave this window open?
9	The four of us were all <b>together / altogether</b> at the coffee shop. This book is <b>together / altogether</b> too long.
10	At some point, the speaker <b>alluded/referred</b> to the new opportunities in business. The speaker <b>alluded/referred</b> to statistics that demonstrated the increased number of small businesses.

**Ex. 298. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary.**

1	I resent your <b>allusion / illusion</b> to my cooking as comparable with McDonald's. You have the <b>allusion / illusion</b> that I enjoy classical music – I don't.
2	Many a would-be-bride has been left at the <b>altar / alter</b> . Would it be inconvenient for you to <b>altar / alter</b> your plans for this weekend?
3	The campaign director divided the state <b>among / between</b> his three most competent assistants. In many of today's homes, the care of the children is divided <b>among / between</b> the two parents.
4	You would not believe the <b>amount / number</b> of the time I have spent on the project. I wish I could refuse the <b>amount / number</b> of hours I have spent on this project.
5	Ira was <b>angry at / angry with</b> the thought of working overtime. Ira was <b>angry at / angry with</b> his boss for insisting that Ira work overtime.
6	I am <b>anxious / eager</b> about the diagnosis. I am <b>anxious / eager</b> to see your new car.

7	Marlene cannot find her glasses <i>anywhere / anywheres</i> .
8	Paula looks very much <i>like / as</i> her sister. Kate swims <i>like / as</i> well as Pam does. Carl looks <i>like / as</i> if he needs a nap.
9	The <i>ascent / assent</i> to the tower was frighteningly steep. Because I value his opinion, I will not go ahead with the project without his <i>ascent / assent</i> .
10	This milk tastes <i>very / real / awful</i> . This milk tastes <i>very / real / awful</i> . She wore <i>very / real / awful</i> pearls.

**Ex. 299. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary.**

1	Linda likes to sit <i>besides / beside</i> Ellen at the table. Who, <i>besides / beside</i> Pam, is taking swimming lessons?
2	Our youngest child was <i>born / borne</i> last month. John, has <i>born / borne</i> the burden by himself for long enough.
3	Mickey borrowed the soldering iron <i>from / off</i> Allen.
4	I can <i>borrow / lend / loan</i> you some money. Can I <i>borrow / lend / loan</i> your car? I took a <i>borrow / lend / loan</i> from the bank.
5	I prefer a bicycle with a foot <i>brake / break</i> . Because he didn't <i>brake / break</i> in time, Paul crashed into the tree. If you are not careful, you will <i>brake / break</i> that dish.
6	Some fortunate people <i>can / may</i> arrange their time to include work and pleasure. You <i>can / may</i> hunt deer only during certain seasons.
7	Roy has 90 % of the necessary <i>capitol / capital / Capitol</i> for his new business venture. Trenton is the <i>capitol / capital / Capitol</i> of New Jersey. New Jersey's <i>capitol / capital / Capitol</i> building is in Trenton. Did you visit the <i>capitol / capital / Capitol</i> when you were on Washington, D.C.?
8	An attorney often <i>cites/sights /sites</i> previous cases that support his argument. One of the most beautiful <i>cites / sights / sites</i> in the country is the Grand Canyon. The alternative school will be built on this <i>cite / sight / site</i> .
9	I find this <i>coarse /course</i> fabric to be abrasive. That is an acceptable <i>coarse /course</i> of action.
10	Rice nicely <i>complements / compliments</i> a chicken diner. I'd like to <i>complement / compliment</i> you for doing such a thorough job.

**Ex. 300. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary.**

1	I will <i>communicate with</i> ( <i>call, write, speak</i> ) / <i>contact</i> ( <i>touch</i> ) you in the morning. Superglue adheres on <i>communicate</i> / <i>contact</i> .
2	James is <i>continuously</i> / <i>continually</i> late. The river runs <i>continuously</i> / <i>continually</i> through several towns.
3	Our neighbor has just been elected to the town <i>council</i> / <i>counsel</i> . Two troubled men sought his friend's <i>council</i> / <i>counsel</i> .
4	Because the defendant had a good alibi, his story seemed <i>creditable</i> / <i>credulous</i> / <i>credible</i> . As a result of many hours of hard work, Joe presented a <i>creditable</i> / <i>credulous</i> / <i>credible</i> report. Sandy is so <i>creditable</i> / <i>credulous</i> / <i>credible</i> that one could sell her the Brooklyn Bridge.
5	His unusual recipe called for <i>current</i> / <i>currant</i> jelly. Because the <i>current</i> / <i>currant</i> was swift, the canoe was difficult to maneuver.
6	The <i>desert</i> / <i>dessert</i> is very hot and dry. More and more young soldiers have been <i>deserting</i> / <i>desserting</i> the army. Apple pie is America's favorite <i>desert</i> / <i>dessert</i> .
7	Eventually, every living thing <i>dies</i> / <i>dyes</i> . I'll never <i>die</i> / <i>dye</i> my hair.
8	The builders <i>discovered</i> / <i>invented</i> oil in our land. Whitney <i>discovered</i> / <i>invented</i> the cotton gin.
9	Marlene <i>draws</i> / <i>drawers</i> very well. She keeps her pads and pencils in the top <i>draw</i> / <i>drawer</i> of her desk.
10	The Harlows <i>emigrated</i> / <i>immigrated</i> from England. After <i>emigrating</i> / <i>immigrating</i> to the United States, the Harlows settled in Kansas.

**Ex. 301. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary.**

1	John Simpson is an <i>infamous</i> / <i>famous</i> car thief. Arthur Jones is an <i>infamous</i> / <i>famous</i> pianist.
2	My car can run <i>farther</i> / <i>further</i> on this brand of gasoline. I cannot continue this discussion any <i>farther</i> / <i>further</i> .
3	Gary invited <i>fewer</i> / <i>less</i> people to his office party this year. Since she moved from a house to an apartment, she has <i>fewer</i> / <i>less</i> space.
4	Please dress <i>formally</i> / <i>formerly</i> for the wedding. I was <i>formally</i> / <i>formerly</i> employed by a jewelry company, but I am now working in a bank.

5	Alice performed a <i>well / good</i> job. Alice performed the job <i>well / good</i> . Alice feels <i>well / good</i> about herself ( <i>not bad</i> ). Alice feels <i>well / good</i> today ( <i>not seek</i> ).
6	The continuous, harsh, and rasping sound <i>grated / greeted</i> on my nerves. A <i>grate / great</i> in the sidewalk covered the opening to the sewer. Ernest Hemingway was considered a <i>grate / great</i> writer in his own lifetime.
7	Orange juice is <i>helpful / healthy</i> . If you eat properly and exercise sufficiently, you will be <i>helpful / healthy</i> .
8	Although he did not state it directly, the candidate <i>implied / inferred</i> his opponent was dishonest. From the mayor's constructive suggestions, the townsfolk <i>implied / inferred</i> that he was trying his best to do a good job.
9	Marlene stood <i>in / into</i> her living room. Wayne came rushing <i>in / into</i> the room.
10	I think <i>it's / its</i> a fine idea. The dog wagged <i>it's / its</i> tail.

**Ex. 302. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary**

1	Mrs. Peterson always buys that <i>kind of / sort of / type of</i> meat. I like that <i>kind of / sort of / type of</i> book. This is my favorite <i>kind of / sort of / type of</i> music. ( <i>These expressions can be used interchangeably. They should never be followed by "a"</i> ).
2	I'll need one more <i>lead / led</i> pipe to complete this plumbing job. I only enjoy a race when I am in the <i>lead / led</i> . John was unfamiliar with that route, so Jules <i>lead / led</i> the way.
3	Mike needs to <i>learn / teach</i> how to communicate with people. Liana is patiently trying to <i>learn / teach</i> me to type.
4	If the customs officer finds nothing wrong with a traveler's luggage, the officer <i>lets / leaves</i> the traveler <i>let / leave</i> the area.
5	Roy was excited about his first <i>loose / lose</i> tooth. If you step out of line, you will <i>loose / lose</i> you place.
6	The <i>manor / manner</i> , or landed estate, dates back to feudal times in England. They don't like the <i>manor / manner</i> in which you respond to my question.
7	The coal <i>minors / miners</i> were trapped during the cave-in. The young man was not allowed to enter the bar because he was a <i>minor / miner</i> .
8	Because of Mike's high <i>morale / moral</i> standards, he returned the wallet to its owner. The story of The <i>Boy Who Cried Wolf</i> has a <i>morale / moral</i> that applies to everyone. Because the war was immoral, the <i>morale / moral</i> of the troops was low.

9	When we drove past the skunk, the car was filled with a <b>nauseous / nauseated</b> odor. The odor of the skunk <b>nauseous / nauseated</b> Sara.
10	The amount of paint needed to finish the job would fill a one-gallon <b>pale/ pail</b> . Because of the long illness, Maria 's complexion was very <b>pale / pail</b> .

**Ex. 303. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary.**

1	We <b>past / passed</b> the model T on the parkway. You cannot always try to recapture the <b>past / passed</b> .
2	If we work together, perhaps we can end the war and achieve a truly lasting <b>piece / peace</b> . In time, we will be paying an extremely high price for a <b>piece / peace</b> of paper.
3	Older children frequently <b>prosecute / persecute</b> their younger siblings. If you do not return the stolen money, you will be <b>prosecuted / persecuted</b> .
4	The items written in a young girl's diary are very <b>personnel / personal</b> . When applying for a job at a large company, you must go to the <b>personnel / personal</b> office.
5	The meaning is quite <b>plain / plane</b> and requires no further explanation. The <b>plain / plane</b> landed smoothly. Please <b>plain / plane</b> the wood so that I can build a birdhouse from it.
6	Studying computer programming is a <b>practical / practicable</b> plan in today's job market. Computerizing payroll is a <b>practical / practicable</b> business decision.
7	A preface always <b>precedes / proceeds</b> the body of the book. Don't let me interrupt you; <b>precede / proceed</b> with your work.
8	A school is as good as the teachers and the <b>principal / principle</b> . The <b>principal / principle</b> actors in the play remained for a final rehearsal of the second act. The <b>principal / principle</b> upon which many simple machines are based is frequently the lever.
9	As the campers lay down for the night, <b>quite / quiet</b> settled over the campsite. That is <b>quite / quiet</b> a strong accusation.
10	When we <b>raise / rise</b> the flag of the game, everyone will <b>raise / rise</b> .

**Ex. 304. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary.**

1	The chairman requested committee members to <b>sit / set</b> down. The artist <b>sit / set</b> his clay on the workbench and began to create a sculpture.
2	Theatre seats are most often <b>stationary / stationery</b> . At work, I use the company's business <b>stationary / stationery</b> .
3	Ms Sanchez was <b>surely / sure</b> the meeting would start on time. <b>Surely / sure</b> , I can rely on your being there on time.

4	Miss Smith <i>learns / teaches</i> math every Thursday. Ron Jonas, a student, <i>learns / teaches</i> math from Ms Smith.
5	New York is smaller <i>than / then</i> Wyoming, but Wyoming has a much smaller population <i>than / then</i> New York. First the eastern board was colonized, <i>than / then</i> settlers moved westward.
6	When leaving <i>their / there / they're</i> war-torn country, most of the refugees left their possessions behind. <i>Their / there / there are</i> no easy answers to the problems of worldwide hunger. As for the members of Congress, <i>their / there / they're</i> not always responsible for the wisest decisions.
7	The special crew worked <i>threw / through</i> the night to repair the damaged wires. When the Little League pitcher <i>threw / through</i> the ball, her teammates cheered.
8	United States presidents often travel <i>too / to / two</i> foreign countries. Many foreign heads of state visit the United States <i>too / to / two</i> . <i>Too / to / two</i> visitors were Bush and Putin.
9	The <i>vain / vane / vein</i> man peered at his reflection in every window as he strolled down the street. A rooster is the traditional weather <i>vain / vane / vein</i> symbol. <i>Vains / vanes / veins</i> are passage ways that carry deoxygenated blood to the heart.
10	<i>Vale / veil</i> is an uncommonly used synonym for valley. The mourning woman hid her grief behind her <i>vale / veil</i> .

**Ex.305. Choose the correct usage with the help of a dictionary if necessary.**

1	The smaller children were told to <i>wade / weighed</i> near the shore. The clerk <i>wade / weighed</i> and priced the fresh vegetables.
2	If you measure your <i>waste / waist</i> before you go to buy the pattern, you will avoid much confusion. Don't <i>waste / waist</i> precious time gossiping on the phone.
3	Tomorrow morning the general <i>weather / whether</i> conditions will determine the distance of our first day's hike. <i>Weather / Whether</i> or not you wish to pay taxes, you must.
4	The teacher asked, " <i>Whose / who's</i> responsible for clean-up today?" We must determine <i>whose / who's</i> turn it is.
5	Kurt Vonnegut <i>rights / writes / rites</i> excellent fiction. Their attorney explained the family's <i>rights / writes / rites</i> in the lawsuit. The religious <i>rights / writes / rites</i> of many an Indian tribe are an impressive part of their culture.
6	<i>Where is</i> your / you're <i>car parked</i> ? <i>Your / You're</i> attempting something that's too difficult for you.

## ДОДАТОК

**Table of irregular verbs**  
**Таблиця нерегулярних дієслів**

№ пор.	Infinitive	Past Simple (Indefinite)	Past Participle	Equivalent
1	arise	arose	arisen	піднятися; виникнути
2	awake	awoke	awoken	будити, прокинутися
3	be	was; were	been	бути
4	bear	bore	born; borne	народжувати
5	beat	beat	beaten	бити
6	become	became	become	перетворюватися на; ставати; набувати
7	begin	began	begun	почати
8	bent	bent	bent; bended	зігнути(ся)
9	bereave	bereft; bereaved	bereft; bereaved	позбавляти
10	beseech	besought; beseeched	besought; beseeched	благати
11	bet	bet; betted	bet; betted	битися об заклад
12	bid	bid; bade; bad	bid; bade; bad	наказувати; прохати
13	bind	bound	bound	зв'язати
14	bite	bit	bit; bitten	кусати
15	bleed	bled	bled	кровоточити
16	blow	blew	blown	дмухати
17	break	broke	broken	(з)ламати
18	breed	bred	bred	вирощувати
19	bring	brought	brought	принести
20	broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	розповсюджувати
21	build	built	built	будувати
22	burn	burnt; burned	burnt; burned	палити; горіти
23	buy	bought	bought	купити, придбати
24	can	could	could	могти; уміти
25	cast	cast	cast	кинути
26	catch	caught	caught	ловити; піймати
27	choose	chose	chosen	обрати; вибрати
28	cleave	clove; cleft	clove; cleft	розсікати
29	cling	clung	clung	чіплятися



30	come	came	come	прийти
31	cost	cost	cost	коштувати
32	creep	crept	crept	повзти
33	cut	cut	cut	різати
34	dare	durst; dared	durst; dared	сміти
35	deal	dealt	dealt	мати справу
36	dig	dug	dug	копати
37	dive	dived; dove	dived	пірнати
38	do	did	done	робити
39	draw	drew	drawn	рисувати (креслити)
40	dream	dreamt; dreamed	dreamt; dreamed	марити; мріяти
41	drink	drank	drunk	пити; випивати
42	drive	drove	driven	гнати; їхати
43	dwell	dwelt	dwelt	мешкати; затримуватися
44	eat	ate	eaten	живитися; їсти
45	fall	fell	fallen	падати
46	feed	fed	fed	годувати
47	feel	felt	felt	відчувати
48	fight	fought	fought	битися
49	find	found	found	знаходити
50	flee	fled	fled	тікати; рятуватися
51	fling	flung	flung	кинути
52	fly	flew	flown	літати
53	forbid	forbad; forbade	forbidden	заборонити
54	forecast	forecast; forecasted	forecast; forecasted	передвіщати
55	foresee	foresaw	foreseen	передбачати
56	foretell	foretold	foretold	пророкувати
57	forget	forgot	forgotten	забувати
58	forgive	forgave	forgiven	вибачити
59	forsake	forsook	forsaken	залишати
60	freeze	froze	frozen	змерзнути; заморожувати
61	get	got	got	отримати
62	gold	gilt; gilded	gilt; gilded	позолотити
63	give	gave	given	дати

64	go	went	gone	йти; уходити
65	grind	ground	ground	точити; молоти
66	grow	grew	grown	зростати
67	hang	hung; hanged	hung; hanged	висіти; повісити
68	have	had	had	мати
69	hear	heard	heard	слухати
70	heave	heaved; hove	heaved; hove	підіймати(ся)
71	hew	hewed	hewed	рубати; тесати
72	hide	hid	hidden	ховати(ся)
73	hit	hit	hit	ударити; влучити
74	hold	held	held	тримати
75	hurt	hurt	hurt	завдавати болю
76	keep	kept	kept	зберігати
77	kneel	knelt	knelt	становитися навколішки
78	know	knew	known	знати
79	lade	laded	lade; laden	відвантажувати
80	lay	laid	laid	класти; положити
81	lead	led	led	вести
82	lean	leant; leaned	leant; leaned	спиратися; притулятися
83	leap	leapt; leaped	leapt; leaped	стрибати; скакати
84	learn	learnt; learned	learnt; learned	навчати
85	leave	left	left	залишати
86	lend	lent	lent	позичати
87	let	let	let	дозволити
88	lie	lay	lain	лежати
89	light	lit; lighted	lit; lighted	запалювати; освітлювати
90	lose	lost	lost	втрачати
91	make	made	made	робити
92	may	might	might	могти; мати можливість
93	mean	meant	meant	мати на увазі
94	meet	met	met	зустріти
95	mistake	mistook	mistaken	помилитися
96	mow	mowed	mown; mowed	косити; жати
97	pay	paid	paid	платити

98	plead	pleaded; pled	pleaded; pled	звертатися до суду
99	prove	proved	proved; proven	доводити
100	put	put	put	класти
101	quit	quit; quitted	quit; quitted	кидати; залишати
102	read	read	read	читати
103	rend	rent	rent	роздирати
104	rid	rid; rided	rid; rided	позбавляти
105	ride	rode	ridden	їздити верхи
106	ring	rang	rung	дзвонити
107	rise	rose	risen	піднятися
108	run	ran	run	бігати
109	saw	sawed	sawn; sawed	пиляти
110	say	said	said	говорити; сказати
111	see	saw	seen	бачити
112	seek	sought	sought	шукати
113	sell	sold	sold	продавати
114	send	sent	sent	послати
115	set	set	set	установлювати
116	sew	sewed	sewed; sewn	шити
117	shake	shook	shaken	трусити
118	shave	shaved	shaved; shaven	голити(ся)
119	shed	shed	shed	проливати; роняти
120	shine	shone; shined	shone; shined	світити(ся); сяяти
121	shoot	shot	shot	стріляти; проростати
122	show	showed	shown; showed	показувати
123	shrink	shrank; shrunk	shrunk	скорочуватися
124	shut	shut	shut	зачиняти
125	sing	sang	sung	співати
126	sink	sank	sunk	опускатися; тонути
127	sit	sat	sat	сидіти
128	slay	slew	slain	убивати
129	sleep	slept	slept	спати
130	slide	slid	slid	ковзати; вислизнути
131	sling	slung	slung	жбурляти; підвішувати

132	smell	smelt; smelled	smelt; smelled	пахнути; нюхати
133	smite	smote	smitten	ударяти; розбивати
134	sow	sowed	sowed; sown	(по)сіяти
135	speak	spoke	spoken	говорити
136	speed	sped; speeded	sped; speeded	прискорювати
137	spell	spelt; spelled	spelt; spelled	писати або читати по літерах
138	spend	spent	spent	витрачати
139	spill	spilt; spilled	spilt; spilled	пролити
140	spin	spun; span	spun	прясти
141	spit	spat; spit	spat; spit	плювати
142	split	split	split	розщепити(ся)
143	spoil	spoil; spoiled	spoil; spoiled	псувати
144	spread	spread	spread	поширитися
145	spring	sprang	sprung	підхопитися; виникнути
146	stand	stood	stood	стояти
147	steal	stole	stolen	украсти
148	stick	stuck	stuck	уколоти; приклеїти
149	sting	stung	stung	ужалити
150	strike	struck	struck	ударити; страйкувати
151	string	strung	strung	нанизати; натягнути
152	strive	strove	striven	намагатися
153	swear	swore	sworn	(по)клястися
154	sweep	swept	swept	мести
155	swim	swam	swum	пливти
156	swing	swung	swung	качатися
157	take	took	taken	взяти; брати
158	teach	taught	taught	навчати
159	tear	tore	torn	рвати
160	tell	told	told	розповідати; сказати
161	think	thought	thought	думати
162	thrive	throve; thrived	thriven; thrived	процвітати
163	throw	threw	thrown	кидати
164	thrust	thrust	thrust	штовхати
165	tread	trod	trod; trodden	ступати

166	understand	understood	understood	розуміти
167	undo	undid	undone	знищувати, відмінити зроблене
168	upset	upset	upset	перекинути(ся)
169	wake	woke	woken	прокидатися; будити
170	wear	wore	worn	носити (одяг)
171	weave	wove, weaved	woven, weaved	ткати
172	wed	wed; wedded	wed; wedded	видавати заміж
173	weep	wept	wept	плакати
174	wet	wet; wetted	wet; wetted	намочувати
175	win	won	won	виграти
176	wind	wound	wound	заводити (механізм)
177	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	взяти назад; відкликати
178	work	worked; wrought	worked; wrought	працювати
179	wring	wrung	wrung	скрутити; тиснути
180	write	wrote	written	писати

---

---

## Література

---

---

1. *Alexander L. G.* English Grammar for Intermediate Students. — Longman groups UK Limited, 1992.
2. *Azar B. S., Azar D. A.* Fundamentals of English Grammar. — Prentice Hall Regents, 1993.
3. *Azar B. S., Azar D. A.* Understanding and Using English Grammar. — Prentice Hall Regents, 1992.
4. *Byrd P., Benson B.* Applied English Grammar. — Heinle & Heinle Publ., 1992.
5. *Foley B. H.* Grammar in Action. — Heinle & Heinle Publ., 1990.
6. *Frank M.* Modern English Exercises for Non-native Speakers. — Prentice Hall Regents, 1986.
7. *Fuchs M., Westheimer M.* Focus on Grammar: An Intermediate Course for Reference and Practice. — Longman groups UK Limited, 1994.
8. *Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English.* Pearson Education Limited, 2003.
9. *Murphy R.* English Grammar in Use. A Self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students. — Cambridge Univ. Press, 1996.
10. *Thompson A. S., Martinet A. V.* A Practical English Grammar Exercises 1 and 2. — Oxford Univ. Press, 1992.
11. *Бахов І. С.* Практикум з граматики англійської мови. English Grammar Practice: Навч.-метод. розробка. — К.: МАУП, 2001.



---

---

## Зміст

Передмова.....	3
Tenses .....	4
Prepositions.....	93
Modal verbs .....	99
Gerund. Infinitive.....	114
Passive voice .....	140
Reported speech.....	157
Conditional sentences .....	164
Intermediate tests .....	181
Word Usage .....	201
Додаток .....	208
Література .....	214

The Practice Book contains grammar exercises in the main sections of the English Grammar: The Verb Tenses, Prepositions, Modal Verbs, Non-Finite Forms of the Verb, the Infinitive, the Gerund, the Passive Voice, Reported Speech, Conditionals, and Subjunctive Mood with 'wish'. The second, revised edition of the Practice Book is supplemented with grammar tests for revision of sections and checking the progress of studying English. The Practice Book envisages work under teacher's guidance and individual work of students at the exercises. The exercises can be used for extra work at the class lessons.

For Intermediate students of the English Language and lecturers.

Навчальне видання

**Бахов** Іван Степанович

**ENGLISH GRAMMAR PRACTICE**

**ПРАКТИКУМ З ГРАМАТИКИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ**

3-тє видання, доповнене

**Educational edition**

**Bakhov, Ivan S.**

**ENGLISH GRAMMAR PRACTICE**

3rd edition, supplemented

Відповідальний редактор *С. Г. Рогузко*

Коректор *Л. В. Логвиненко*

Комп'ютерне верстання *О. А. Залужна*

Художнє оформлення *С. В. Фадєєв*

Підп. до друку 11.12.06. Формат 60×84/16. Папір офсетний. Друк офсетний.  
Ум. друк. арк. 12,6. Обл.-вид. арк. 13,85. Тираж 3000 пр. Зам. № 3

Міжрегіональна Академія управління персоналом (МАУП)

03039 Київ-39, вул. Фрометівська, 2, МАУП

*Свідоцтво про внесення до Державного реєстру  
суб'єктів видавничої справи ДК № 8 від 23.02.2000*

Поліграфічний центр УТОГ

03038 Київ-38, вул. Новоказальна, 8

*Свідоцтво КІ № 35 від 02.08.2000*